Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 930SC.
SoftBank 930SC is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

● Read this guide thoroughly before using 930SC to ensure proper usage.

● After reading this guide, keep it on hand for later reference.

● Should you lose or damage this guide, contact Customer Service (🢂P.14-29).

● Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.

Notes

• Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.

• Contents are subject to change without prior notice.

• Some functions and services are not available in Japan.

• Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact Customer Service (🢂P.14-29).

• SoftBank will replace missing/misplaced pages upon request.

**Chapter Contents
At a Glance**

Contents

1 Getting Started

2 Basic Operations

3 Calling

4 Messaging

5 Internet Services

14 Appendix

Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. These accessories are also sold separately.
For details on accessories or optional items, contact Customer Service (➋P.14-29).

Battery [SCBAK1]

Stylus with Strap [SCKAP1]

Stereo Earphone Microphone

Earphone Conversion Cable with Microphone

- Use only specified Charger (Optional) for charging.
- 930SC takes microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card (not included). Purchase one to use Memory Card functions.
- microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card" in this guide.
- Download Samsung PC Studio from SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/930download.html).

About This Guide

In this guide, SoftBank 930SC is referred to as 930SC/handset. Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screen shots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

Screen Shots and 930SC Illustrations

Screen shots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual Display images. Product illustrations may differ from actual product appearances.

In some screen shots, Wallpaper is set to *None* for Display image clarity.

Confirmations & Warning Messages

Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all handset confirmations and warning messages carefully.

Japanese Functions & Services
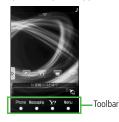
When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

Symbols

In this guide, graphics represent 930SC keys; see "Parts & Functions" (❂P.1-2). Alternatively, use Touch Panel and Stylus to access functions. Touch Panel operations are indicated as follows:

Toolbar

Operation options appear at the bottom of Display.

Toolbar

Tap Menu items to select them.

Toolbar Operations

```
Tap Phone
        └── Assigned Function
```
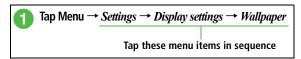
Touch Panel Operations

Touch Panel supports Stylus taps or swipes. For details, see "Touch Panel" (➋P.1-5).

Menu Operations

Menu operation explanations are abbreviated with arrows.

Menu

```
❶ Tap Menu → Settings → Display settings → Wallpaper
                    └── Tap these menu items in sequence
```

For details, see "Selecting Functions from Main Menu" (➋P.2-3).

Highlighting

In this guide, "to highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

Safety Precautions

- Read these safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe all precautions to avoid injury to yourself and others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

● Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:

⚠ **Danger**	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
⚠ **Warning**	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
⚠ **Caution**	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

● Symbols

Prohibited Actions	Compulsory Actions	Attention Required

⚠️ Danger

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Use only specified battery and Charger (➲P.v).
Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating, or bursting.

Do not short-circuit Charger Port.
Keep metal objects away from the Charger Port. Keep handset away from jewelry. Battery may leak, overheat, burst, or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry handset.

Do not disassemble or modify handset.

- Do not open the housing of handset or Charger; it may cause electric shock or injury. Contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.

- Do not modify handset or Charger. Fire or electric shock may result.

Battery

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.
Eyes may be severely damaged.
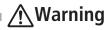
Avoid battery leakage, breakage or fire injury. Do not:

- Heat or dispose of battery in a fire.

- Disassemble, modify, or break battery.

- Damage or solder on to battery.

- Use a damaged or deformed battery.

- Use a non-specified charger (➲P.v).

- Force battery into handset.

- Charge or place battery near fire, heat sources or expose it to extreme heat.

- Use battery for other equipments.

⚠ Warning

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into handset.
Do not place metal or flammable objects in handset or
Charger. This may cause fire or electric shock. Keep handset
out of the reach of children.

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.
Fire or electric shock may occur.

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.
Keep handset and Charger away from chemicals/liquids. Fire
or electric shock may result.

Keep handset/Charger out of microwave ovens.
Battery or handset may leak, burst, overheat, or ignite.

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.
Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.
Use of controls, adjustments, or performance of procedure
other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation
exposure. As the emission Record from Mobile Light LED used in this
product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet.
Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only. Contact SoftBank
Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.

If water or foreign matter gets inside handset:
Discontinue handset use to prevent fire or electric shock. Turn
handset power off, remove battery, unplug Charger and
contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Do not subject handset to shocks.
Subjecting handset or Charger to shocks may cause
malfunction or injury. Should handset break, remove battery
and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.
Discontinue handset use. Fire or electric shock may occur.

If an abnormality occurs:
Should there be any unusual sound, smoke, or odor,
discontinue handset use to avoid fire or electric shock. Turn
handset power off, remove battery, unplug the Charger, and contact the
SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Fire or electric shock
may result.

**Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near
filling station or places with risk of fire/explosion.**
Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may
lead to fire or explosion.

Handset

Preventing accidents

- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (Effective November 1 2004).
- Do not use headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Do not turn the volume up so high that ambient sounds cannot be heard, especially when walking in or around traffic to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by the strap.
Injury or breakage may result.

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.
Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

Ringtone & Vibration Settings
Select settings carefully if you have a heart condition or wear a pacemaker/defibrillator.

During thunderstorms, turn power off; move to a safe place.
There is a risk of a lightning strike or electric shock.

Do not use handset with wet hands.
Doing so may lead to electric shock or damage to 930SC.

Charger

Use only the specified voltage.
Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.

- **AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input**
  SoftBank is not liable for problems caused by charging handset abroad.

Do not use step up/down transformers.
Use of the AC Charger with step up/down transformers may cause fire, electric shock or damage.

Do not touch plug blades with wet hands.
Electric shock may occur.

Do not plug multiple cords in one outlet.
Excess heat or fire may occur.

Do not bend, twist, pull, or set objects on the cord. Do not put heavy objects on the cords or heat or pull the cords.
Fire or electric shock may result.

Do not short-circuit Charger Port.
Keep the metal away from Port. Overheating, fire, or electric shock may result.

Do not use AC Charger if the cord is damaged.
Fire or electric shock may be caused. Contact the SoftBank Customer Assistance to replace the cord.

During thunderstorms:
Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire, or electric shock.

Keep Charger out of the reach of children.
Electric shock or injury may result.

Battery

If battery does not charge properly, stop charging.
Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.

If there is leakage or abnormal odor, keep battery away from fire sources.
It may catch fire or burst.

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration, or distortion, remove battery from handset.
It may leak, overheat, or explode.

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

People with implanted pacemakers/defibrillators should keep handset more than 22 cm away.
Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

Turn handset power off in crowded places such as trains. People with implanted pacemakers/ defibrillators may be near.
Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.
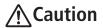
Observe these rules inside medical facilities:
- Do not take handset into operating rooms or Intensive or Coronary Care Units.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical facilities.
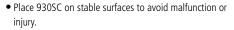
Consult the manufacturer of other electronic medical equipment about radio wave effects.

⚠ Caution

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Handset Care

- Place 930SC on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.

- Keep 930SC away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.

- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage, or burnout.

- Keep 930SC away from direct sunlight (Inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration, or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.

- Keep 930SC out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.

- Keep 930SC away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.
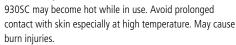
Usage Environment

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.

- Avoid using 930SC on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.

- Keep 930SC away from credit cards, phone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

Handset

930SC temperature
930SC may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.

Avoid leaving 930SC in extreme heat (Inside vehicles, etc.).
Handset may heat up and lead to burns.

Volume settings
Keep handset volume moderate.
Excessive volume may cause damage to your hearing.
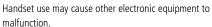
Headphones

- Do not unplug by pulling the cord; may damage the cord.

- Keep the plug clean to avoid noise or malfunction.

Inside vehicles:
Handset use may cause other electronic equipment to malfunction.

Should skin irritation occur, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

Skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness may result depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (front)	AL DICASTING
Housing (rear)	PC
Call Key/Clear Key/End Key	SUS plate
Side Keys	PC + ABS
Earphone Microphone Port	PC
USIM Card Port	PC
Memory Card Port	PC
Camera DECO	PC + GF30%
TV antenna	PC
Battery Cover	PC

Charger

Charger

- Grasp the plug (not the cord) to disconnect Charger. Otherwise, fire or electric shock may result.

- Keep the cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.

- Stop use if the plug is hot or improperly connected. Fire or electric shock may result.

Always charge 930SC in a well-ventilated area.
Avoid covering/wrapping Charger; may cause damage or fire.

Disconnect AC Charger during long periods of disuse.
Be sure to unplug AC Charger after use.

Handset Maintenance
When cleaning, disconnect AC Charger to prevent shock or injury.

Battery

Keep battery out of the reach of children.
They may sustain injuries. And when using, do not let them remove battery from handset.

Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside vehicles.
Overheating or fire may occur and performance may be reduced.

Do not expose battery to liquids.
Performance may deteriorate.
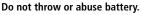
If battery fluid makes contact with skin or clothes:
Rinse with clean water immediately.

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.
Tape over battery terminals before disposal, or bring them to a SoftBank shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Do not throw or abuse battery.
Battery may overheat, burst, or ignite.

Charge battery within a range of 5°C- 40°C.
Battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

If a child is using handset, explain all these instructions and supervise handset's usage.

If there is any abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Do not leave battery uncharged.
Charge at least once every six months.

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration of any data on handset/Memory Card. Please keep separate records of Phonebook entries, etc.

- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.

- Use handset without disturbing others.

- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.

- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.

- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
  Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
  Eavesdropping
  Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.

- Do not park illegally to use handset.

- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

- Never use handset aboard aircraft (Keep the power off). Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Function Usage Limits

- The following functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation:
  - Camera
  - Media Player
  - TV

- After a long period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; establish a Network connection to restore usability.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damage.
- Use handset between 5°C - 40°C. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight may damage the color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow, or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.
- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid placing handset in damp places (Restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may get inside handset causing malfunction.

- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only.

Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in 930SC is copy protected material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Trademarks

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,490,165	5,056,109	5,504,773	5,101,501
5,506,865	5,109,390	5,511,073	5,228,054	5,535,239
5,267,261	5,544,196	5,267,262	5,568,483	5,337,338
5,600,754	5,414,796	5,657,420	5,416,797	5,659,569
5,710,784	5,778,338			

- Video Call, S! Mail, PC site browser, S! Quick News, S! Loop, S! Appli, S! Friend's Status, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Music Connect, Graphic Mail, Feeling Mail, 3D Pictogram, S! Information Channel and Weather Indicator are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

- "SOFTBANK", SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.

- "Yahoo!", the "Yahoo!" and "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

- This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s NetFront Internet browser software. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

ACCESS NetFront

- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.

- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

- Contains Macromedia® Flash® Flash Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

- Copyright© 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

- JBlend™ is incorporated in this product. JBlend™ is a Java™ execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.

- Powered by JBlend™ Technology.
  JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

- Powered by JBlend™, ©1997-2006 Aplix Corporation.
  All rights reserved.

- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

- "Chaku-Uta®" and "Chaku-Uta Full®" are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.

- microSD™ and microSDHC™ are trademarks of SD Association.

- Bluetooth is a trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Samsung Electronics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

- Powered by SwiftDecoder™ Copyright ©1996-2007, Omniplanar, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

- Windows and Windows Media Player are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

- Windows is an abbreviation for the Microsoft Windows operating system.

Bluetooth®

In the frequency band of the Bluetooth® functions of 930SC, Industrial, scientific or medical equipments such as microwave ovens or in-house radio stations such as the ones used in production lines or by amateur radio stations (Referred to as "other radio stations" hereafter) are used. In order to prevent radio interference with other radio equipments, follow the points listed below in using handset.

1. Before using Bluetooth® functions, confirm there are no "other radio stations" operating near you.

2. In case there is a radio interference with "other radio stations," move to some other place or stop the Bluetooth® functions (Stop emitting the radio waves) immediately.

3. If you have any questions or problems with Bluetooth® emissions, contact SoftBank as listed below:

   Contact: SoftBank Customer Center

   From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll free) for General Information. See "Customer Service" (❷P.14-29) for landline numbers by service area.

930SC transmits on the 2.4 GHz band, employing frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) modulation, with resistance to radio frequency interference between 1.5 - 5 meters, depending on usage environment.

SAR Certification

930SC meets the technical standards of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 930SC is 0.161 W/kg. This value is obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

MIC: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm

ARIB: http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html

* The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

* Body SAR: The SAR value at the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset placed on the body and using earphone-microphone.

** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): The value measured when having talked continuously for 6 minutes.

*** Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the ordinary handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For further information, see the following SoftBank website:

http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.349 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.271 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of belt clips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of

http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after searching on FCC ID A3LSWD930SC.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.386 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.440 W/kg.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS

Declaration of Conformity (R&TTE)

Samsung Electronics

We,

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

GSM Mobile Phone : 930SC

to which this declaration relates, is in conformity with the following standards and/or other normative documents.

SAFETY	EN 60950- 1 : 2001+A11:2004
EMC	EN 301 489- 01 V1.6.1 (09~2005)
	EN 301 489- 07 V1.3.1 (11~2005)
	EN 301 489- 17 V1.2.1 (08~2002)
	EN 301 489- 24 V1.3.1 (11~2005)
SAR	EN 50360 : 2001
	EN 62209-1 : 2006
RADIO	EN 301 511 V9.0.2 (03~2003)
	EN 300 328 V1.7.1 (10~2006)
	EN 301 908- 1 V3.2.1 (05~2007)
	EN 301 908- 2 V3.2.1 (05~2007)

We hereby declare that [all essential radio test suites have been carried out and that] the above named product is in conformity to all the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC.

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex[IV] of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body(ies):

BABT, Balfour House, Churchfield Road,
Walton-on-Thames, Surrey, KT12 2TD, UK※

Identification mark: 0168

C€0168

The technical documentation kept at :

Samsung Electronics QA Lab.

which will be made available upon request.
(Representative in the EU)

Samsung Electronics Euro QA Lab.
Blackbushe Business Park, Saxony Way,
Yateley, Hampshire, GU46 6GG, UK※

2008.09.17

(place and date of issue)

Yong-Sang Park / S. Manager

(name and signature of authorised person)

※ It is not the address of Samsung Service Centre. For the address or the phone number of Samsung Service Centre, see the warranty card or contact the retailer where you purchased your phone.

Getting Started

1

Parts & Functions

Handset

❶ Earpiece/Speaker

❷ External Light
Flashes for Missed Call or Incoming Call/Mail;
illuminates red while charging.

❸ Display

❹ ⊐ Start Key
Make and receive Voice Calls.

❺ CLEAR Clear/Back Key
Return to the previous operation step.

❻ Internal Camera
Use for Facial recognition or Video Calls.

❼ Optical Sensor

❽ ⊐ Power/End Key
Turn power on/off or end operations.

❾ Microphone

❿ External Antenna
Use for Digital TV reception.

⓫ HOLD Hold Key
Lock or unlock Touch Panel and buttons of 930SC.

⓬ Earphone Microphone Port
Connect Earphone Conversion Cable with
Microphone here.

⓭ Charger/External Device Port
Connect Charger, PC, etc. here.

⓮ Strap Eyelet

⑮ Infrared Port
Use for infrared data transmissions.

⑯ Battery Cover
Remove to access Battery, or USIM/Memory Card.
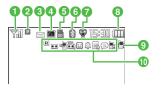
⑰ Mobile Light
Turn this on when capturing images.

⑱ External Camera
Capture images or send video during a Video Call.

⑲ 🔲 Manner Key
Press for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel Manner mode.

⑳ Internal Antenna

㉑ ⬜ Camera Key
Press for 2+ seconds to activate Camera.
Release shutter to capture images.

㉒ ⬜ TV Key
Press for 1+ seconds to activate TV.

㉓ 🔲 Side Key
Lower ringer, Media Player, or TV volume.

㉔ 🔲 Side Key
Raise ringer, Media Player, or TV volume.

● **Internal Antenna/Optical Sensor**
930SC transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna. There is no external antenna.
Voice quality may vary by where/how handset is used.
Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna and Optical Sensor.

Display Indicators

❶ 📶 Signal Strength (More bars 📶 indicate stronger signal)
📶 Out-of-Range (*Language* set to Japanese)
OUT Out-of-Range (*Language* set to *English* or 한국어)
📵 Emission Off Mode

❷ 📶 3G Network Connected
📶 3G Network Connected (Ready)
📶 3G Network Connected (In Use)
📶 Packet Communication Unavailable
📶 SSL Connected
📶 GSM Network Connected
📶 GSM Network Connected (Ready)
📶 GSM Network Connected (In Use)
📶 Voice Call in Progress (flashes while dialing or receiving calls)
📶 Video Call in Progress (flashes while dialing or receiving calls)
📶 My status Online

③ ✉ New Message
    ✉ Sending Mail
    ✉ Receiving Mail
    ▣ Activate Delivery Report
    ▣ Memory Full (S! Mail/SMS)
    ✪ Downloading Content Key

④ ▤ Music Playback
    ▤ Music Paused
    ▤ Recording TV program
    ▤ Reservation Set

⑤ ▤ Memory Card Inserted
    ▤ Loading Memory Card Data
    ▤ Software Update Required
    ▤ PC Site Browser Connected
    ▣ Unread S! Quick News
    ▣ Unread S! Information Channels
    🔒 All Keys Locked

⑥ 🅱 Bluetooth® Activated
    🅱 Bluetooth® Transmission
    🕭 Bluetooth® Packet Data in Transmission
    🎧 Headset connected with Bluetooth® Activated
    🔌 USB Connected
    🔌 (Yellow) USB Connection
    📶 (Gray) Infrared Data Transmission Activated
    📶 (Red) Infrared Data in Transmission
    🔄 Data Synchronized

⑦ 😊 Manner Mode
    🚗 Drive Mode
    🏮 Meeting Mode

    🎴 Outdoor Mode

⑧ ▥ Battery Strong
    ▥ Battery Moderate
    ▥ Battery Low
    ▥ Battery Weak (Charge Now)
    ▥ (Flashing in Red) Battery Empty

⑨ 🔔 Ringer and vibration activate for incoming calls
    🎵 Only ringer activates for incoming calls
    📳 Only vibration activates for incoming calls
    🔕 Ringer and vibration are muted for incoming calls

⑩ ® Roaming Activated
    📟 Answering Machine Activated
    📞 Voice Mail/Call Forwarding (*No reply*) Activated
    📟 Unheard Answering Machine Message
    📟 Unheard Voice Mail
    🔲 S! Friend's Status Request
    🙂 Unread S! Friend's Status Notification
    ⏰ Alarm Set
    📅 Schedule Set
    📅 Schedule with Alarm Set
    ☑ Tasks Set
    ☑ Tasks with Alarm Set
    Ⓢ Secret Mode Set
    🔒 Password Locked

• When 📶 (Red) appears, only Packet Communications and Outgoing S! Mail are available; Calls, Incoming S! Mail, and SMS Service are all disabled.

Touch Panel
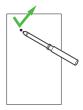
Use Stylus to tap or swipe 930SC Touch Panel items. Some functions support rotating 930SC vertically or horizontally to change Display orientation.

Using Touch Panel

Using Touch Panel and the conventions in this guide are described here.

Tap
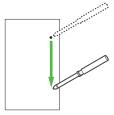
Lightly touch target item on Display. Select items to open or execute functions.

- In this guide, some tap operation procedures are abbreviated with arrows (●P.vi).

Swipe

Gently swipe Stylus across Touch Panel to scroll menus or Internet windows.

- In this guide, this operation appears as "scroll the screen".

Touch & Hold
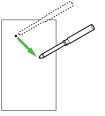
Touch and hold a Display item for 1+ seconds to activate/execute that item.

- In this guide, this operation appears as "touch and hold".

Drag & Drop

Touch and hold a Display item, move it to the desired location (drag) and release it (drop).

- In this guide, this operation appears as "drag" or "drop".

Note

- **Use bundled Stylus with Touch Panel. Finger use leaves fingerprints; pens may affect Panel sensitivity. Do not apply force to Touch Panel; press gently and carefully.**
- **Tapping multiple functions simultaneously may cancel operations.**
- **Touch sensor may not function properly in high humidity or if handset is wet.**
- **Using protective film, etc. on Touch Panel may inhibit Sensor function.**

Window Operations

Basic operations for each screen are described here.

● Like a screen below, tap ◀ / ▶ to move to the next or previous data or image.

```
◀        2008. 12        ▶
Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat
 30   1   2   3   4   5   6
  7   8   9  10  11  12  13
 14  15  16  17  18  19  20
 21  22  23  24  25  26  27
 28  29  30  31   1   2   3
  4   5   6   7   8   9  10

Add new  Go to  Switch  More
   ●       ●    view●     ●
```

● Scroll down for more menu items, tabs or page area out of view in Mail, PC Site Browser, or File Viewer. Alternatively, when entering text or viewing messages or web pages, use ⬆/⬇ to scroll.

```
Display settings
Wallpaper
LightShow.jpg              >
Widget setting
17 Widgets                 >
Font type
Font 1                     >
Font size
Backlight
Operator name
```
                                    Truncated
                                    Area

● Tap pulldown menu (⬛⬛⬛▼) for menu items.

```
📱  ⚲          ABC
              Group
ABC  DEF      Reading
        Blank
```
                              Pulldown
                              Menu

```
New    Delete  Send   More
entry
 ●       ●      ●       ●
```

Rotating Display

These functions support Display rotation when 930SC is rotated vertically/horizontally. In this guide, instructions are for portrait operations.

● Image Viewer (P.2-21)
● PC Site Browser (P.5-4)
● Digital TV (P.6-1)
● Mobile Camera (P.7-1)
● Media Player (P.8-4)
● File Viewer (P.9-10)

Advanced

🔧 **Settings**
● Calibrate Touch Panel (☞P.13-16)

Charging Battery
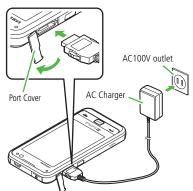
• If handset is on while Charger is connected, battery indicator shows charge level, charging as follows: ■ → ■ → ■ . ■ flashes when battery is fully charged. If handset is off, *Charging...* appears while charging and when battery is charged, *Battery full* appears. External Light illuminates while charging.

• An empty battery requires 180 minutes (approx.) to charge with power off. Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.
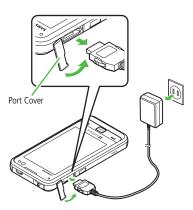
AC Charger

1 **Open Port Cover and insert Charger Connector Adapter into External Device Port**

Port Cover   AC Charger   AC100V outlet

2 **Plug AC Charger into an AC 100V outlet**

3 **When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and unplug AC Charger**

Port Cover

USB Charging
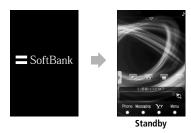
Connect 930SC to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

1 **Open Port Cover and insert USB Cable Connector into External Device Port**

2 **Insert USB Plug into a PC USB port**

3 **When battery is charged, disconnect handset, close Port Cover, and remove USB Plug**

• USB charging takes longer; charging time varies by PC. A weak battery may not charge via USB.

Power On/Off

Power On

1 **Press ⌐◎⌐ until Display turns on**

SoftBank ➡

Standby

• To confirm handset phone number, tap Phone → *Account details*. Your phone number appears in Account details. Edit or use contents (❍P.2-19).

• When handset is left open without operations, Display automatically shuts down to conserve power (❍P.13-14). In addition, by default, Key Lock is automatically activated when Display shuts down (❍P.1-9).

• The first time Messaging, ⋎⋎ etc. is tapped or a function requiring a network connection is activated, *Retrieve NW info* confirmation appears. Tap *Yes* and follow onscreen instructions.
 - *Retrieve NW info* confirmation appears after replacing USIM Card or executing *All reset*.
 - Retrieving Network Info sets date and time. Network Services (Messaging, Yahoo! Keitai, and S! Friend's Status) are available.
 - Retrieve Network Info manually (❍P.13-25).
 - This guide describes operations with date and time set unless noted otherwise.

Power Off

1 **Press** 🔲 **until Display turns off**

● SoftBank logo appears and 930SC powers off.

Note

● **For proper shut down, make sure to press** 🔲 **until Display turns off.**

Handling Precautions

Note these precautions when handling 930SC.

● Activate Key Lock before putting 930SC in a pocket.
● When carrying AC Charger, retract plug blades. Do not pull/twist power cord; doing so may damage it.

Using Key Lock

Use Key Lock to prevent accidental Touch Panel or key presses when carrying 930SC in a pocket or bag.

1 ⬜HOLD

● Key Lock is activated.

● Key Lock can be activated while operating functions. However, some functions may not allow Key Lock during operation.
● Key Lock is activated during a call. To use handset during a call, cancel Key Lock.
● By default, when 930SC is left idle, Display shuts down and Key Lock is automatically activated. To cancel automatic Key Lock activation, set *Auto lock* to *Off* (❸P.11-4).
● To cancel key Lock, press ⬜HOLD or ⬜CLEAR for Key Lock guidance, then press and hold ⬜HOLD or ⬜CLEAR.

Minding Mobile Manners

Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset.

● Turn your handset off in theaters, museums, and other places where silence is the norm.
● Keep your handset off aboard airplanes, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
● Refrain from using your handset in quiet places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
● Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
● Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Related Functions

930SC offers two manner-related modes.

●Manner mode
Mute handset sounds and activate Vibration for all alerts, tones, and alarms. Use Manner Key to activate or cancel Manner mode.

●Emission Off mode
Temporarily suspends all handset transmissions. Other functions may be used.

●Alternatively, activate Vibration or mute handset tones from *Sounds & Alerts* (⊃P.13-13).

Emission Off Mode

1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → Under *Emission Off mode*, *On* or *Off***

```
Call settings
Optional services
Call time & cost
Answering machine
Video call
Reject incoming calls
Emission Off mode
  On        Off
Show my number
Auto redial
```

●If handset powers off in Emission Off mode, confirmation appears the next time 930SC powers on. Tap *No* for Normal mode.

Manner Key

Use Manner Key to toggle Manner mode. In Standby, press 🔘 for 1+ seconds to activate or cancel Manner mode. Using 🔘 to cancel Manner mode returns 930SC to whatever mode was previously in use.

1 🔘 **(1+ seconds)**
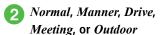
●When Manner mode is active, 😺 appears.
●Even when Manner mode is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.

Mode Settings

930SC features five modes, including Manner.

1 🔘

2 *Normal, Manner, Drive, Meeting,* **or** *Outdoor*

Modes

Select mode by usage; edit Normal mode or Manner mode settings as required (🔗P.1-11).

Mode	Description
📢 Normal Mode*	All Sounds & Alerts settings apply
💟 Manner Mode	Mutes 930SC system sounds
🚗 Drive Mode	Mutes ringer; plays Driving Message and activates Answer Phone for calls
📇 Meeting Mode	Mutes Ringtones & System sound
🎋 Outdoor Mode	Maximizes tone volume

* Normal mode indicator does not appear in Standby.

Changing Mode Settings

Change incoming transmission response by mode.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Manner mode settings*

```
Manner mode settings
📢 Normal        ●
💟 Manner        ○
🚗 Drive         ○
📇 Meeting       ○
🎋 Outdoor       ○


        Edit
         ●
```

2 Tap Edit → Select mode

3 Set items

■ **To set ringtone volume and System sounds**
Volume → Adjust volume

■ **To set ringtone for Voice Call or Video Call**
Ringtone → *Voice call* or *Video call* → Select a file location → Select a file
● In list, tap ▶ to playback the file.

■ **To set ringtones for *Message, S! Friend's Status, Missed call notif., S! Quick News,* or *Delivery report***
Ringtone → Message, S! Friend's Status, Missed call notif., S! Quick News, or Delivery report → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Duration field → Enter duration
● In list, tap ▶ to playback the file.

■ **To set Vibration**
Vibration → Select item to set → *Off, Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5,* or *Link to sound*
● *Link to sound*: 930SC vibrates along with ringtone.
● In list, tap ▶ to view the vibration.

■ **To set operation sound volume and touch vibration**
Operation feedback → Adjust level

■ **To set System sounds**
System sounds → Check item to set → Tap Save

■ **To set External light**
Incoming light → Select an item → Select color
● In list, tap ▶ to view the light color.

■ **To set Notification light**

Notification light → Select an item
→ Select color
● In list, tap ▶ to view the light color.

■ **To set Answering machine**

Answering machine → *On* or *Off*
● For details on items, see "Mode Settings"
(●P.1-13) and "System Sounds" (●P.1-16).

● If *Ringtone reducer* is *On*, ringtone volume is
reduced to Level 1 for the first two seconds,
regardless of Ringtone volume set for Voice/Video
Call.

● Use 🔼/🔽 to adjust ringtone volume while 930SC
rings.

● To mute Voice/Video Call or Message tones, set
Volume and *Vibration* to *Off*. 🔕 appears.

● Open *Sound settings* to change sounds for
Normal mode. Settings cannot be changed for
other modes.

Mode Settings

Available items vary by mode. Defaults are as listed below.

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Volume					
Voice call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Video call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Message	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
S! Friend's Status	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Missed call notification	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
S! Quick News	Level 0	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 0
Delivery report	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
System sounds	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Level 0	Level 5
Ringtone (Upper: Ringtone, Lower: Duration)					
Voice call	Young hopefuls.mp4	N/A	N/A	Young hopefuls.mp4	Young hopefuls.mp4
Video call	Samsung Tune.mp4	N/A	N/A	Samsung Tune.mp4	Samsung Tune.mp4
Message	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds
S! Friend's Status	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds
Missed call notification	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds
S! Quick News	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds
Delivery report	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	N/A	N/A	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds	A Toy Box.mp4 5 seconds

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Vibration					
Voice call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Video call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Message	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Friend's Status	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Missed call notification	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
S! Quick News	Off	Off	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Operation feedback					
Volume	Level 0	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Touch vibration	Level 3	Level 3	N/A	N/A	N/A
System sounds	Popup box alerts/Call end tone/Alerts on call	Alerts on call	N/A	Alerts on call	Popup box alerts/Call end tone/Alerts on call

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Incoming light					
Voice call	Green	Green	Green	Green	N/A
Video call	Green	Green	Green	Green	N/A
Message	Green	Green	Green	Green	N/A
S! Friend's Status	Green	Green	Green	Green	N/A
Missed call notification	Green	Green	Green	Green	N/A
S! Quick News	Off	Off	Off	Off	N/A
Alarms	Green	Green	Green	Green	N/A
Delivery report	Green	Green	Green	Green	N/A
Notification light					
Missed call	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue	N/A
Message	Green	Green	Green	Green	N/A
Answering machine	White	White	White	White	N/A
S! Friend's Status	Light Blue	Light Blue	Light Blue	Light Blue	N/A
Missed call notification	Blue	Blue	Blue	Blue	N/A
Alarms	Pink	Pink	Pink	Pink	N/A
Delivery report	Green	Green	Green	Green	N/A
Answering machine	Off	On	N/A*	Off	N/A

* Answering machine activates automatically in Drive mode and cannot be disabled.

System Sounds

Available items vary by mode.

Item	Description
Popup box alerts	Sounds for confirmations/warnings.
Minute minder	Sounds about once a minute during calls.
Call connect tone	Sounds before called phone rings to notify the call is going to be connected.
Call end tone	Sounds when a call ends.
Power on	Sounds when the power is turned on.
Power off	Sounds when the power is turned off.
Alerts on call	Sounds for alarms/incoming transmissions during a call.

Advanced

🔧 Settings

● Adjust volume (☞P.13-13)
● Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call (☞P.13-13)
● Set ringtone other than Voice Call (☞P.13-13)
● Set ringtone duration other than Voice Call (☞P.13-13)
● Set Vibration (☞P.13-13)
● Set Touch panel tone volume level and vibration level for operating the touch panel (☞P.13-13)
● Set system sounds (☞P.13-13)
● Set External Light color for incoming transmissions (☞P.13-13)
● Set External Light color for missed calls (☞P.13-13)
● Activate or cancel Emission Off mode (☞P.13-23)
● Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction (☞P.13-23)
● Switching Manner Mode (☞P.13-24)

Security Codes

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use 930SC.

Phone Password

The 4-digit number (9999 by default) is required to operate/change some handset functions.

● Entered Phone Password digits are represented with ＊.
● If incorrect, an error message appears. Try again.
● Phone Password can be changed on 930SC (⊙P.11-2).

Center Access Code

4-digit number specified at subscription; required to change service subscriptions or Optional Services to operate handset from landlines.

Network Password

4-digit number specified at subscription, required to restrict handset services. Entering incorrect Network Password 3 consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact Customer Service (☞P.14-29).

• Network Password can be changed on 930SC (☞P.3-18).

Note

• **Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code, and Network Password. If you lose a code, contact Customer Service (☞P.14-29).**
• **Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password to others. SoftBank is not liable for damage caused by misuse of these codes by others.**

Emergency Numbers

Call 110 (Police), 119 (Fire & Ambulance) or 118 (Maritime Safety Agency). These numbers can be dialed even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

930SC Status	Emergency Numbers
Emission Off mode activated (☞P.1-10)	None
Call Cost limit exceeded (☞P.13-21)	110, 119, 118
Phone lock activated (☞P.11-4)	None
Password lock activated (☞P.11-4)	110, 119, 118
Required PIN not entered (☞P.11-2)	None
USIM Card not be authenticated (☞P.11-3)	None
Outgoing Call Barring activated (☞P.3-17)	110, 119, 118

Emergency Location Report

When calls are placed to Police or other emergency agencies from 930SC, handset location information is automatically sent to the corresponding agency. 930SC transmits location based on base station positioning information.

• Location accuracy may vary by geography or signal conditions. Always verify your location with address or nearby landmark.
• Base station positioning accuracy ranges from several hundred meters to 10 kilometers. This information may differ from actual location due to distance of the closest base station location.
• This function is only available if the agency receiving an emergency call has implemented infrastructure for receiving location information.
• If you hide Caller ID by dialing 184 before calling an emergency number, your location information is not sent. However, authorities may access this information when necessary.
• No subscription/communication fee required.

Note

• **Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan depending on available network, signal conditions or handset settings.**

Using Widgets

About Widgets

Use Widgets as shortcuts; save frequently used functions as Widgets and add to Standby Display.

● Tap a Widget to activate the function.

● Widget Bar is hidden by default. Tap to open.

● Drag and drop Widgets between Widget Bar and Standby Display.

● In this guide, Widgets Bar items are referred to as "Widgets" and Standby items as "Standby Widgets".

Standby

Tap here

Widget Bar Appears

Standby Widget

Window Operations

Widgets appear in Widget Bar. Scroll Widget Bar for more Widgets.

Widget Bar

Standby Widget

Widgets

Saving Items as Widgets

Select items from Widget Setting list. Save up to 17 items as Widgets.

❶ Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Widget setting*

Widget setting
Digital Clock ✓
Analog Clock ✓
Dual Clock ✓
S! Information Ch…
Weather Indicator ✓
Wallpaper Setting ✓
Calendar ✓

Set ●   Default set ●

❷ Check items to register → Tap Set

・Tap Default set to reset defaults.

Available Functions

Function	Description
Digital Clock	Show digital clock
Analog Clock	Show analog clock
Dual Clock	Show two clocks as specified in world map. Tap Clock to set area
S! Information Channel	Access S! Information Channel
Weather Indicator	Show Weather Indicator
Wallpaper Setting	Open Data Folder to set Wallpaper
Calendar	Show Calendar. Choose view
Alarm	Show Alarm settings
S! Friend's Status	Access S! Friend's Status
S! Quick News	Access S! Quick News
Oekaki anime	Launch Oekaki anime
Photo Album	Launch Photo Album
Data Folder	Open Data Folder
Camera	Activate Camera
TV	Activate Digital TV
Music Player	Use Music Player in Standby
Movie Player	Activate Movie Player
Dice	Launch Dice

Function	Description
RandomBall	Launch RandomBall
S! Mail	Open Messaging menu
Notepad	Open Notepad
Voice recorder	Activate Voice recorder
Calculator	Open Calculator
Converter	Open Converter
Stopwatch	Launch Stopwatch
Dictionary	Open Dictionary
Phonebook	Open Phonebook
Tasks	Show all tasks
Y!keitai Bookmarks	Show bookmarks
PC site Browser bookmarks	Show bookmarks
Settings	Open Settings menu

Note

・**To use S! Friend's Status or S! Quick News, subscription and setting are required.**

Using Standby Widgets

Drag Widgets from Widget Bar to Standby to activate functions in Standby or use as shortcuts.

- Tap Digital Clock or Analog Clock Widgets to show digital clock or analog clock in Standby. These Widgets have no other function.

1 Tap Widget Bar Tab

Widget Bar Tab

2 Drag Widget from Widget Bar to Standby Display

3 Tap Standby Widget

- Standby Widget may overlap.
- Drag Standby Widgets to arrange them.
- Change Widget order in Widget Bar. Drag Widgets to rearrange them.

Setting Wallpaper in Standby

Pulldown Menu

Still Image File

1 Tap Widget Bar Tab

2 Drag *Wallpaper Setting* Widget from Widget Bar to Standby

3 Select a file location using the pulldown menu

4 Tap ◁/▷ to select a file

⑤ *Save*

Using S! Friend's Status in Standby

Check or operate S! Friend's Status from Standby.
Up to 6 people including "Me" may appear.

My Status Icon
S! Friend's Member Icons

Member Standby Widget

Icon
Status Icon and Status Label
Answer Status

Member List Standby Widget

❶ **Tap Widget Bar Tab**

❷ **Drag *S! Friend's Status* Widget from Widget Bar to Standby Display**

• S! Friend's status icon is displayed on Standby.

❸ **Tap Standby Widget**

• S! Friend's status member list appears.

Use Standby Widget for Status

❶ **Tap Standby Widget *Menu* for member list**

❷ *My status settings* → *On*

• To hide your status, select *Off*.

Saving Members as Standby Widget

❶ **Tap Standby Widget *Menu* for member list**

❷ *Add member* → **Tap a field to register a member**

❸ **Add a member**

■ **To register from Phonebook**
  Phonebook → Search and select an entry (◎P.2-16) → Select the number

■ **To register from S! Friend's status member list**
  S! friend's status → Choose an S! Friend's status member
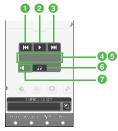
Using S! Quick News in Standby

S! Quick News Widget appears in Standby by default.

News Ticker

Settings Icon

1 **Tap News Ticker**
  ● Contents list appears.

2 **Check news (◎P.5-10 S! Quick News List Update Information ③)**

● If *S! Quick News* Widget appears in Widget Bar, drag it to Standby Display beforehand.

Using Music Player in Standby

❶ ❷ ❸

❹ ❺
❻
❼

❶ Cue/Previous track
  Tap within first 3 seconds of track playback for previous track; after 3 seconds for beginning of current track.

❷ Play/Pause

❸ Next track

❹ Title (or file name if there is no title)

❺ Artist name

❻ Launch Media Player

❼ Volume level

1 **Tap Widget Bar Tab**

2 **Drag *Music* Widget from Widget Bar to Standby**

3 **Play music**
  ● Press ⤒/⤓ to adjust the volume.
  ● In Standby, press 🔲 → *Yes* to stop playback.

● Playback from *Music* Widget starts from first song in *All music* or from last played point.

Other Standby Widgets

Add these Widgets to Standby Display; tap a Widget to launch function or change its settings.

Dual Clock

● To change the region for Clock, tap Clock → Scroll map and tap city to register → Tap Save.
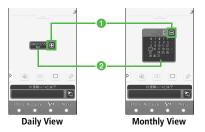
S! Information Channel

● Tap *Menu* for *S! Information Channel/Weather Indicator* menu.

● For details on subscribing to S! Information Channel, see "Subscribing to Service" (●P.5-12).

Weather Indicator

● Tap Weather Indicator for weather information. Alternatively, tap 🌀 for Weather Indicator menu.

● If unsubscribed, tap ticker or 🌀 for S! Information Channel menu. Upon subscription to S! Information Channel, Weather Indicator appears in Standby. For details on subscribing to S! Information Channel, see "Subscribing to Services" (●P.5-12).

● See "Using Weather Indicator" (●P.5-12).

Calendar

Daily View   **Monthly View**

❶ ⊞/⊟: Toggle view
Tap to toggle month/day view.
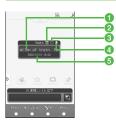
❷ Calendar
Tap this to launch Calendar.

Alarm

● Time set for Alarm appears. If more than 1 alarm is set, alarm closest to current time appears.

● Tap Widget to activate Alarm (●P.9-3).

Tasks

❶ Title

❷ Priority

❸ Status

　■ : Completed

　■ : Uncompleted

　■ : Expired

❹ Alarm set

❺ Due date

•If multiple tasks are set, task due closest to current time appears.

Using Standby Widgets as Shortcuts

Tap these Widgets to launch corresponding functions:

●Oekaki anime

●Photo Album

●Data Folder

●Camera

●TV

●Movie Player

●Dice

●RandomBall

●S! Mail

●Notepad

●Voice Recorder

●Calculator

●Converter

●Stopwatch

●Dictionary (English or Japanese dictionary)

●Phonebook

●Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai or PC site browser)

●Settings

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.1-25

● Canceling S! Quick News Settings

🔧 **Settings**

● Set Frequently Used Functions to Widget Bar (☞P.13-14)

🔧 Advanced Settings

Widgets

Removing S! Friend's Status Member

In the member list, *Menu* → *Remove member* →
Choose an S! Friend's status member → *Yes*

Changing S! Friend's Status Icon

In the member list, *Menu* → *Change icon* → Choose
an S! Friend's status member → Select an icon

Calling or Messaging to S! Friend's Status Member

■ **To make a voice call**
In the member list, 📞 → *Voice call*
■ **To make a video call**
In the member list, 📞 → *Video call*
■ **To send messages**
In the member list, 📨 → *S! Mail* or *SMS* →
(❍P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❺, P.4-6 Sending SMS
Messages ❺)

Adding S! Quick News Content

🔘 → *Add News* → *Add content* or *Add S! Loop*
→ (❍P.5-10 Registering S! Quick News List ❹, P.5-
10 Registering S! Loop List ❸)

Canceling S! Quick News Settings

🔘 → *Remove content* → Select an item → Tap
Delete → Check items to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*
● If *Mark all* is selected, enter Phone Password → Tap
OK → *Yes*.

Refreshing S! Quick News List Automatically

🔘 → *Auto refresh* → (❍P.5-23)

Changing Display Style of S! Quick News

🔘 → *Display style* → Select an item

Changing Marquee Speed of S! Quick News

🔘 → *Marquee speed* → Select an item

Toggling Unread/Read Contents of S! Quick News

🔘 → *Unread/Read setting* → Select an item

Basic Operations

2

Selecting Functions

Selecting from Toolbar
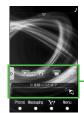
Select *Phone, Messaging, Yahoo! Keitai* or *Menu* in Standby. Frequently used functions/settings (e.g., *Select* or *Save*) appear in Toolbar. Items and numbers vary by menu or function. If More appears in Toolbar, tap to see more items. Tap an item to execute it.

Toolbar

Selecting from Widgets

Tap Standby Widgets to select functions or use them in Standby.
See "Using Widgets" (◉P.1-20) for details.

Standby Widgets (default)

These Widgets appear in Standby by default:

Widget	Function
	Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks (◉P.5-7)
	Camera (◉P.7-3)
	TV (◉P.6-2)
	Oekaki Anime (◉P.7-10)
	S! Quick News (◉P.5-9)

Selecting from Shortcut Bar

Select *Received msg., Schedule, Alarm, Bluetooth®,* or *Infrared*.

1 **In Standby, tap Shortcut Bar tab**

Shortcut Bar

2 **Tap an icon**

Icon	Function
	Received msg.
	Daily view for today's schedule
	Alarm list
	Bluetooth® window
	Infrared window

Selecting from Main Menu

1 **In Standby, tap Menu**

Main Menu

2 **Tap an item**

3 **Repeat Step 2 to select target function**

Example: Selecting *Wallpaper*

Tap *Settings*	**Tap *Display settings***

Tap *Wallpaper*	**Wallpaper setting window appears**

Settings
- Sound settings
- Display settings
- Phone settings
- Security
- Call settings
- Manner mode setti…
- Connectivity
- Memory settings

Display settings
- Wallpaper — LightShow.jpg
- Widget setting — 17 Widgets
- Font type — Font 1
- Font size
- Backlight
- Operator name

Wallpaper
- Preset pictures
- Pictures
- Digital camera
- Flash®
- Other documents
- Slide show
- None

- Press ⌫ to return to the previous operation step.
- Press 📞 to exit menu. 930SC returns to Standby. If multiple functions are active, active window appears.
- Press 📞 to cancel menu. Handset returns to Standby or previous window. In some menus, a confirmation appears.

Using Shortcuts in Standby

Key	Corresponding Menu/Function
☎ (1+ seconds)	Open Call log (Dialed)
CLEAR	Open Recordings list
CLEAR (1+ seconds)	Toggle Answering Machine On/Off
CLEAR (Until released)	Release Key Lock
HOLD (When released)	Set/Release Key Lock
⚟	Select Manner mode
⚟ (1+ seconds)	Toggle Manner mode On/Off
↑/↓	Adjust Earpiece volume
↑/↓ (2+ seconds)	Set Earpiece volume to the minimum/maximum
TV	Open TV Menu
TV (1+ seconds)	Activate TV
▭ (2+ seconds)	Activate Camera

Common Operations

Selecting/Canceling Multiple Items

Tap *Mark all* or *Unmark all* to check/uncheck all items to delete or move.

- Available operations vary by function.
- Enter Phone Password to delete all items.

Adjusting Volume

When adjusting volume or vibration level, touch and hold the slider and slide it.

Volume	
Voice call	3
Video call	3
Message	3
SI Friend's Status	3
Missed call notif.	3

- For volume adjustment, sliding the knob plays sound to let you confirm the volume level to be set.

Standby Display Options

Wallpaper

Set still image, animation or Slide Show to appear in Standby. Alternatively, hide still image.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* →
Display settings → *Wallpaper*

Wallpaper
Preset pictures
Pictures
Digital camera
Flash®
Other documents
Slide show
None

2 Set Wallpaper

■ **To set an image in Data Folder**
Select a file location → Select a file
→ Tap Set

■ **To set Slide show**
Slide show → (➡P.2-4 Slide Show
2)

■ **To set none**
None

Slide Show

Set up to nine images to appear in sequence in Standby.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* →
Display settings → *Wallpaper*
→ *Slide show*

Slide show
Images   Settings
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
Save Preview Set multiple Change order

2 Add still images

■ **To add images one by one**
Select a part where no still image is
assigned to → Select a file location
→ Select a still image

■ **To add images at once**
Tap Set multiple → Select a file
location → Check still images to add
→ Tap OK

3 Edit Slide show

■ To preview
Tap Preview → *Yes* (Fit to screen) or *No* (Original proportion)

■ To set effect
Tap *Settings* tab → *Effect* → Select an item

■ To change playback time for a still image
Tap *Settings* tab → *Duration* → Select time

4 Tap Save → *Yes* (Fit to screen) or *No* (Original proportion)

● **To adjust slide size**
To fit image to Display, choose *Yes* in Step **4**. For original proportion, choose *No*.
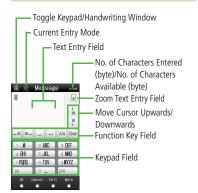
Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.2-30
● Enlarging and Viewing Still Image
● Rotating Still Images

Text Entry

Tap or write with stylus to enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), alphanumerics (single-/double-byte), symbols (single-/double-byte), pictograms, emoticons or Hangul.
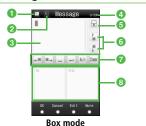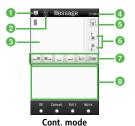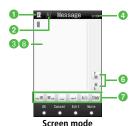
Text Entry Window

Keypad Entry Window

Toggle Keypad/Handwriting Window
Current Entry Mode
Text Entry Field
No. of Characters Entered (byte)/No. of Characters Available (byte)
Zoom Text Entry Field
Move Cursor Upwards/ Downwards
Function Key Field
Keypad Field

Icon	Entry Mode	Icon	Entry Mode
漢	Kanji or Hiragana	※	Symbols (double-byte)
カ	Katakana (double-byte)	記#	Symbols (single-byte)
ｶﾅ	Katakana (single-byte)	絵	Pictograms
A	Alphanumerics (double-byte)	顔	Emoticons
Ab	Alphanumerics (single-byte)	한	Hangul
1	Number (double-byte)	a	Alphanumerics (double-byte, lower case)
12	Number (single-byte)	ab	Alphanumerics (single-byte, lower case)

Handwriting Window

Box mode

Cont. mode

Screen mode

❶ Toggle Keypad/Handwriting Window

❷ Current Entry Mode
 Same as Keypad Entry window

❸ Text entry field (background in Screen mode)

❹ Characters entered (byte)/Characters available (byte)

❺ Zoom text entry field

❻ Move cursor up/down

❼ Function Key field

❽ Writing field

Suggestions

Text entry field

Suggestions*
Japanese Kana conversion alternatives

* Suggestions do not appear in Katakana, alphanumeric, and number input modes. If Prediction entry function is canceled, suggestions appear when characters are converted with Convert or EngNumカナ in Kanji/Katakana input mode.

- For Date field in Day and Time or Time field in Alarm which can only enter numbers, Number keys, Clear, ⟶/⟵ appears.
- When Voice Call or Video Call arrives while entering text, simply answer the call. When the call ends, text entry window returns. When Alarm is activated, end Alarm to return to text entry window.

Changing Entry Mode

Text entry modes may be limited by status.

1 In text entry window, Ab

2 Select entry mode to switch

- In text entry window, tap 記号 to switch to Symbols, 絵゛゜/絵 to toggle Pictograms and Emoticons.

Text Entry Method

Hiragana/Kanji

Use predictive entry to convert and enter characters. Alternatively, convert entered hiragana directly. Katakana or pictograms may appear in Suggestions.
Example: Enter "鈴木"

Entering with Keypad

1 **In text entry window, 🔲**

- Displayed icons vary depending on the current entry mode.

2 *Keypad*

3 ᴬᵇ → *漢かな*

4 **Tap `3 さ DEF` 3 times**

- "す" is entered.

5 ⏪
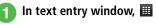
- To enter same character continuously, tap ⏪ to move the cursor to the right.

6 **Tap `3 さ DEF` 3 times → `絵゛゜`**

- "ず" is entered.

7 **Tap `2 か ABC` twice**

- "き" is entered.

8 **Tap "鈴木"**

Entering with Handwriting

Example: *Box mode*

1 **In text entry window, 🔲**

- Icons vary by entry mode.

2 *Box mode, Cont. mode* or *Screen mode*

3 ᴬᵇ → *漢かな*

4 **In かな field, enter "す", "ず" and "き"**

■ 漢 Message　0/30K
すず
鈴鹿　涼しい　涼しく　鈴　▲
雀　涼しげ　珠洲　鈴鹿市　▼
▲■ ■▲ ⎵ ↵ A/a Clear

き
カナ

Enter　Convert　EngNum辷†

● In *Box mode*, enter characters one by one.
● In *Cont. mode* or *Screen mode*, write continuously "すずき" in Writing field.

5 **Tap "鈴木"**

● After entering hiragana, tap ⌜絵゛゜⌝ to add ゛ or ゜.
● After entering hiragana, tap A/a to toggle case.
● Tap Clear or press ⌜CLEAR⌝ to cancel a misentry.
● If you over-toggle target character, press ⌜⤶⌝ to toggle in reverse.
● To set as Hiragana, tap Enter.
● If no suggestions appear, tap Convert → ▲■/■▲ to change the range for conversion as required → tap the target conversion alternatives → repeat the steps for other characters.

● If a large number of suggestions appears, tap ▲ / ▼ to scroll Suggestions window.
● When conversion fails, try another reading. When multiple Kanji characters do not convert together, try to convert them separately.
● While suggestions appear, tap Convert for conversion alternatives. While conversion alternatives appear, tap Predict to return to Suggestions.
● Kanji cannot be entered directly in handwriting.
● In *Box mode*, Writing field is divided into two sections. To enter Hiragana, write one by one within かな field. The current entry mode appears in upper left corner of each box; only the specified characters are enterable. For example, when writing a Hiragana character in the box with カナ (double-byte) mode, it will be recognized as the most similar Katakana character.
● Suggestions appear in Function field when you write characters in Handwriting mode. If your writing is recognized as an unintended character, select desired character from Suggestions. Tap ✕ to close Suggestions.
● If the entry mode is set to 漢かな in *Cont. mode* or *Screen mode*, when you write a character other than Hiragana, it will be recognized as the most similar Hiragana character.

Katakana, Alphanumerics and Numbers

1 **In text entry window, Ab**

2 **Select entry mode**

3 **Enter text**

● After entering katakana, tap ⌜絵゛゜⌝ to add ゛ or ゜.
● After entering katakana, tap A/a to toggle case.
● Tap A/a in alphanumerics entry mode to toggle a or A; enter same size/case characters without further mode change. After entering alphanumerics, tap A/a to toggle case.
● Tap Clear or press ⌜CLEAR⌝ to cancel a misentry.
● If you over-toggle target character, press ⌜⤶⌝ to toggle in reverse.

- To enter same character continuously, tap 🔲 to move the cursor to the right.

- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and tap EngNumカナ to toggle katakana/alphanumerics/numbers entry mode.
  Example: Enter "くも" and tap EngNumカナ. ク モ, C, or 22277777 appears in Suggestions.

- In Handwriting mode, any characters written in the filed will be recognized as one of the characters within the specified entry mode.

Symbols

1 **In text entry window,** 記号

- In Handwriting mode, toggle single-byte symbols and double-byte symbols.
- Tap ✲ or ✳ until the target symbol appears.

2 **Select target character**

- You can continuously enter symbols. To stop writing symbols, tap Close.

- Once entered symbols remain as history and appear in Suggestions at first.

- To toggle single-byte symbols and double-byte symbols, tap Full size or Half size.

- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and tap Convert to convert to symbols.
  Example: Enter "てん" and tap Convert, "." or "…" appear among Suggestions.

Pictograms and Emoticons

1 **In text entry window,** 絵 ° or 絵

- In Handwriting mode, toggle pictograms and emoticons.
- To enter emoticons, tap Emoticon after Step **1**.
- Tap 🔼/🔽 or 🔼/🔽 until the target pictogram or emoticon appears.

2 **Select target character**

- You can continuously enter pictograms and emoticons. To stop entering pictograms or emoticons, tap Close.

- Toggle pictograms and emoticons by tapping Pict or Emoticon.

- In message text entry window, tap Pict All or Pict General to toggle all pictograms and only pictograms that all mobile carriers support.

• Once entered pictograms remain as history and appear in Suggestions at first.

• In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter "はーと", "でんわ" and convert to pictograms. Similarly, "わーい" or "えーん" can be converted to emoticons.

Line Breaks

Use these steps to enter Line break in any entry mode.

1 **In text entry window, ↵**

• Alternatively, tap ⬚.

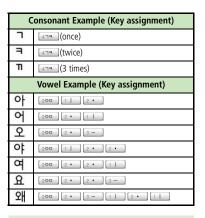• In some entry windows, line break cannot be inserted.

Hangul

1 **In text entry window, Ab →**
韓 (Hangul)

2 **Enter characters**

• Tap number keys to enter assigned character units that appear; combine several consonants and vowels.

Consonant Example (Key assignment)	
ㄱ	４ㄱㄹ (once)
ㅋ	４ㄱㄹ (twice)
ㄲ	４ㄱㄹ (3 times)

Vowel Example (Key assignment)				
아	0ㅇㅁ	1ㅣ	2・	
어	0ㅇㅁ	2・	1ㅣ	
오	0ㅇㅁ	2・	3―	
야	0ㅇㅁ	1ㅣ	2・	2・
여	0ㅇㅁ	2・	2・	1ㅣ
요	0ㅇㅁ	2・	2・	3―
왜	0ㅇㅁ	2・	3―	1ㅣ	2・	1ㅣ

• Hangul appears in received S! Mail, however Hangul cannot be inserted into a reply or forwarded.

Deleting & Editing Text

1 **Move cursor to character to delete, and** `Clear`

●Alternatively, press `CLEAR`.

●When a space is highlighted, the character before cursor is deleted.
●To delete all characters after the cursor, touch and hold `Clear` or press `CLEAR` for 1+ seconds. If there is no character after the cursor, all characters are deleted.
●Press 🔘 to display a confirmation message asking you whether to exit Text Entry screen. Choose *Yes* or *No*.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.2-30
● Adding Text to Templates
● Deleting Text Template
● Specifying Range to Copy/Cut
● Pasting Copied or Cut Text
● Undoing Text Entry
🔧 **Settings**
● Reset entry history to default (☞P.13-16)

User's Dictionary

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 20 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when Reading is entered.

1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User's dictionary* → *Edit dictionary* → Tap New entry**

2 **Tap Word field → Enter word or sentence**

3 **Tap Reading field → Enter reading**

New entry
Word
ケータイ

Reading
けいたい

Save
●

4 **Tap Save**

Saving to User's Dictionary

1 **In text entry window, tap More → *Add to dictionary***

2 **Tap the first letter of adding character, and tap Start point**

3 **Tap the last letter of adding character, and tap End point**

New entry
Word
ケータイ

Reading

Save
●

4 **Tap Reading field → Enter text**

5 **Tap Save**

●If selecting the range which includes a line break, character strings before the line break are saved.
●Tap UserDic at Step **2**. New entry screen appears.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.2-31
● Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary

Settings
● Save entries to User's Dictionary (☞P.13-15)
● Edit User's Dictionary entries (☞P.13-16)
● Delete User's Dictionary entries (☞P.13-16)
● Reset entry history to default (☞P.13-16)

Phonebook

Phonebook Entry Items

Create up to 1,000 entries. The number of items that can be saved varies by USIM Card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to use USIM Card Phonebook entries.
Each Phonebook entry contains items listed below.

Item/Description	Location
Last name	
Double/single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	930SC: Yes (up to 50 byte)
	USIM Card: Yes[2]
First name	
Double/single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	930SC: Yes (up to 50 byte)
	USIM Card: Yes[2]
Reading last name	
Single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	930SC: Yes (up to 50 byte)
	USIM Card: Yes[2]

Item/Description	Location
Reading first name	
Single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	930SC: Yes (up to 50 byte)
	USIM Card: Yes[2]
Phone number	
Saved along with area code	930SC: Yes (5 entries/up to 32 byte)
	USIM Card: Yes[1][2]
Phone icon	
Select one of seven icons	930SC: Yes
	USIM Card: Yes[3]
E-mail address	
Single-byte alphanumerics	930SC: Yes (5 entries/up to 128 byte)
	USIM Card: Yes[2] (1 entry)

Item/Description		Location
E-mail address icon		
	Select one of four icons	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No (1 icon)
Picture		
	Still image appears for incoming calls	930SC: Yes
	Select a Data Folder image or capture with Camera	USIM Card: No
Face registration		
	Register Phonebook entry to an image,	930SC: Yes
	enabling you to make a voice call, etc. from the image.	USIM Card: No
Ringtone		
	Voice Call/Video Call/ Messages/S! Friend's Status	930SC: Yes
	Selectable from Data Folder	USIM Card: No
Vibration		
	Set vibration for all incoming transmissions	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No

Item/Description		Location
Group		
	Select from 20 groups	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: Yes[1]
Secret mode		
	On/Off	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No
Birthday		
	Date of birth	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No
Blood type		
	Select one of four types or *None*	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No
Hobby		
	Enter up to 100 bytes	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No
Company		
	Enter up to 64 bytes	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No
Job title		
	Enter up to 64 bytes	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No

Item/Description		Location
Address		
	Post code (40 bytes), Country (64 bytes),	930SC: Yes (2 entries)
	Province, City, Street and Additional information (128 bytes)	USIM Card: No
Address icon		
	Select one of two icons	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No
Homepage		
	Enter up to 1,024 bytes	930SC: Yes (2 entries)
		USIM Card: No
Homepage icon		
	Select one of two icons	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No
Memo		
	Enter up to 512 byte	930SC: Yes
		USIM Card: No

1 Number of savable items varies by USIM Card.
2 Number of savable characters varies by USIM Card.
3 Savable icon types vary by USIM Card.

● When inserting other USIM Card with Phonebook entries already saved, a message appears to ask you whether to copy the saved Phonebook entries in USIM Card to 930SC at the first use after the insertion. Choose *Yes* to start copying.

Note

● **Protect important information**
Phonebook entries may be lost/altered if battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period; accidents/malfunctions may also affect entries. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information.

Phonebook Entry Tabs

Phonebook entry information is divided into three tabs. Toggle Tabs to view desired information.

1 **Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search Phonebook and select entry (◎P.2-16) → Tap a tab to switch**

Creating New Entries

Default data location for Phonebook is *Phone*. Set to USIM Card as required (◎P.13-12).

New Entry Details

Example: Creating a new entry and saving Name, Reading, Phone Number and E-mail Address

● For other items, see "Adding Information to Phonebook Entry" (◎P.2-31).

1 **Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap New entry**

● If Save setting (◎P.13-12) is set to *Ask each time*, a message appears to prompt you to specify a saving location. Choose *Phone* or *USIM*.

2 **Tap Name field**

3 *Last name, First name, Reading last name* or *Reading first name* → **Enter last name/ first name/reading** → **Tap OK**

4 **Tap Add phone number field** → **Enter number** → **Select an icon**

5 **Tap Add E-mail address field** → **Enter number** → **Select an icon**

6 **Tap Save**

- **Valid Phone Field Characters**
  Enter 0 through 9, #,*, -, P (Pause), and + (International Code). Tap `P- ✱` to toggle *, - and P. Touch and hold `+ 0` to enter +.
- If a Memory Card file is selected for Incoming Image or Ringtone, copy file to 930SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.
- When using Samsung PC Studio to synchronize Phonebook entries with a PC, Secret entries are not synchronized to PC. If an entry is changed to a Secret entry, it can no longer be synchronized and is deleted from PC. Samsung PC Studio is available for download from SAMSUNG Website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/930download.html).

Saving from Call Log Records

Save numbers from Call Log records to new or existing Phonebook entries.

1 **Tap a Call Log (◆P.3-8)**

```
Received calls
◄ 08/12/15 15:30 ►

      Unknown
      090********

 Missed call
 ⏱ 00:00:16

 📞090********   ✉  📞

Add to          Delete      Add to
phonebook                   black list
  ●               ●            ●
```

2 **Tap Add to phonebook**

3 **Select saving method**

■ **To save as a new entry**
New → (◆P.2-14 Creating New Entries **2**)

■ **To update existing entry**
Update → Search and select an entry (◆P.2-16) → Save a number to Phonebook (◆P.2-14)

Advanced

✎ Advanced Settings ☞P.2-31

● Adding Information to Phonebook Entry
● Sending Phonebook as vFile
● Specifying Saving Destination for Phonebook Entries
● Viewing USIM Card Service Number
● Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily
● Checking Memory Status
● Editing Phonebook
● Adding Phonebook Entry to Speed Dial
● Adding S! Friend's Status Member from Phonebook
● Viewing S! Friend's Status
● Creating and Saving vFiles
● Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth®
● Enter and Save Phone Number

⚙ Settings

● Select Phonebook Save Location (☞P.13-12)
● Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM) (☞P.13-12)
● Change Search Method (☞P.13-12)
● Backup Phonebook entries (☞P.13-12)
● Activate or cancel Simple Search (☞P.13-16)

Using Phonebook

Searching Phonebook

Example: Using ABC search

1 Tap Phone → *Phone book*

Phonebook List

2 Select search method (⦿P.2-17)

● The changed search method settings are saved.

3 Tap target tab

● Alternatively, tap 🔍 and enter the first character of reading.

4 Select target entry

Entry Details

● If Secret mode is set to *Hide*, secret Phonebook entries do not appear. In Phonebook search window, tap More → *Unlock temporarily* to see secret entries.

Changing Search Method

Open the specified search window.

1 Tap Phone → *Phone book* →
Tap the pulldown menu for
search methods

2 *ABC*, *Group*, or *Reading*

3 Search an entry

■ **To search by group**
Select a group → View target
Phonebook entry from search result
● Alternatively, after selecting a group, tap
🔍 and enter first part of reading in text
field.

■ **To search by reading**
View target Phonebook entry from
search result
● Alternatively, tap 🔍 and enter first part
of reading in text field.

● **Phonebook display order**
If *ABC* is selected, they are divided into tabs
representing each column. If *Group* is selected,
the group list appears. You must have Phonebook
entries saved beforehand (●P.2-31). If *Reading* is
selected, the entries appear in the list in the order
of the Japanese syllabary of their reading.

● Phonebook entries set as *Secret mode-On* will
not appear. To include secret entries in the search
result, tap More → *Unlock temporarily* to
temporarily show them.

Calling from Phonebook

1 In Entry Details window, 📞
● If multiple phone numbers are saved in a
Phonebook entry, tap 📞 beside the target
phone number.

2 Make a call

■ **To make a Voice Call**
Voice call

■ **To make a Video Call**
Video call

■ **To make an international call**
International call (●P.3-19
Making International Calls from
Japan)

■ **To make a voice/video call with
showing or hiding Caller ID**
Hide my ID or *Show my ID* → Tap
Call or Video call

● Tapping 📞 beside the target phonebook entry in
Phonebook list screen allows you to make a voice
call to the number. If multiple phone numbers are
saved in a Phonebook entry, phone number select
window appears.

• **Calling from Simple Search or search result**
If *Simple search* (➲P.13-16) is *On*, tap number key to search entry starting with corresponding Reading. Name and phone number appears. Select phone number then tap Speed dial to make a voice call, or tap Video call to make a video call.

Deleting Phonebook

Deleting Selected Entries

1 Tap Phone → *Phone book* → **Tap Delete**

2 Delete entries

■ **For handset or USIM Card Phonebook**
Check entries to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

■ **For both handset and USIM Card Phonebook**
Each entry → 🗑 beside entry to delete → *Yes*

Deleting All Entries

Delete all Phonebook entries from 930SC or USIM Card at once.

1 Tap Phone → *Phone book* → **Tap Delete**

2 Delete entries

■ **For handset or USIM Card Phonebook**
Mark all → Tap Delete → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

■ **For both handset and USIM Card Phonebook**
All entries → *Phone*, *USIM* or *Phone & USIM* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

• Alternatively, in Entry Details window, tap Delete → *Yes*.

Account Details

View handset phone number in USIM Card. Add your name, mail address, street address, and other information.

1 Tap Phone → *Account details*

No name
No name

☐ 090*********
✉ <E-mail address>

Edit Send Reset More

- Alternatively, tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Account details*.

- Tapping ⚫ beside the homepage address registered to Account details opens that page.

Advanced

⚓ Advanced Settings ☞P.2-35
- Editing Account Details
- Sending Account Details as vFile
- Resetting Account Details
- Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder
- Printing with Bluetooth®-Compatible Printer

Data Folder

Organize handset files by file type here.
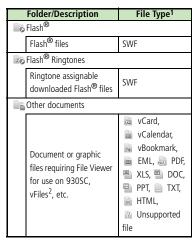
Default Folders

Data Folder contains 9 default folders. Files created with 930SC functions or acquired via Bluetooth®, Internet or Mail are saved to appropriate folder by the file type/format.
Create additional folders within default folders.

Data Folder
■ Pictures
■ My Pictograms
Default Folders ──── ■ Ring songs·tones
■ Music
■ Videos
■ Graphic Mail templates
■ Flash®
■ Flash®Ringtones
■ Other documents
☐ Memory status

Folder/Description	File Type[1]
🖼 Pictures	
Image files captured with 930SC Camera	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
📷 Digital camera	
Still images captured with 930SC Camera (Insert Memory Card)	JPEG
📝 My Pictograms	
Downloaded pictograms	GIF, GPK
🔔 Ring songs · tones	
Voice Recorder files, downloaded music, and other sound files	🔊 SMAF, MIDI, SP-MIDI, SMF, Mobile XMF, 🎵 MPEG4 Audio, 🎤 AMR
🎵 Music	
Downloaded Chaku-Uta®	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, aac, 3gp), smc
🎬 Videos	
930SC video files	🎞 MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp)
📧 Graphic Mail templates	
Created S! Mail Templates	HMT

Folder/Description	File Type[1]
Flash®	
Flash® files	SWF
Flash® Ringtones	
Ringtone assignable downloaded Flash® files	SWF
Other documents	
Document or graphic files requiring File Viewer for use on 930SC, vFiles[2], etc.	vCard, vCalendar, vBookmark, EML, PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, TXT, HTML, Unsupported file

1 Files are saved by type. Files cannot be moved to or saved in folders that do not support them.
2 Use vFiles to send or transfer handset files via S! Mail, etc. 930SC supports vCard (.vcf) for Phonebook entries, vCalendar (.vcs) for Task/ Schedule, and vBookmark (.vbm) for Bookmarks.

- Save up to 999 files/folders in each default folder.
- In a folder, use *Memory status* to confirm memory. Alternatively, confirm memory in *Settings* (○P.2-29).
- In Data Folder, tap 📱 to open Memory Card Data Folder; tap 📱 to return to 930SC Data Folder.
- Tap ⊞/≣ to toggle between List view and Thumbnail view.
- ⇒/⇒ appears in some folders as Downloaded Site shortcut. Select the link to access site via Yahoo! Keitai.

Viewing Files

1. **Tap Menu → *Data Folder***

2. **Select a file location**

3. **Select a file in List window**

- File List Indicators
  - 🔖 : Nontransferable
  - 🔖 : Nontransferable and unusable
  - 🔒 : Protected
  - 📩 : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Valid)
  - 📩 : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Expired)
  - 📩 : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Valid)
  - 📩 : Copy Protected File (Transferable, Content Key Expired)
  - 🎵 : Set as Wallpaper (○P.2-38)/Set as Ringtone (○P.2-38)
- Nontransferable/copy protected files other than preinstalled ones cannot be used.

- **Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder**
  With *Pictures* folder displayed, tap More → *Take photo* to activate Camera in Camera mode.
  Similarly, with *Videos* folder displayed, tap More → *Record video* to activate Camera in Video mode.
  With *Ring songs · tones* folder displayed, tap More → *Record sound* to activate Voice recorder.
  If there is no file in each folder, *Take photo*, *Record video* and *Record sound* menu appear in Toolbar.

Note

- **JPEG Files over 3 MB or larger than 5000 x 5000 pixels cannot be edited. For other formats, files less than 3 MB and smaller than 1600 x 1600 pixels can only be edited. In addition, you can zoom JPEG Files of any size. For animated GIF Files, zooming size vary depending on the data. For other file formats, you can zoom files less than 3 MB and smaller than 5000 x 5000 pixels.**
- **During playback, video file thumbnails do not appear in a list view for *Videos* folder etc.**

Using Image Viewer

View images in Portrait or Landscape view.
Landscape images can automatically rotate to appear in large view when you rotate 930SC.

- This guide illustrates operational procedures in Portrait view.

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures*

2 Select a file

Tool Icons

- When rotating 930SC vertically or horizontally, the screen also rotates.
- Tap the screen to toggle show/hide tool icons and Toolbar. After displaying them 3 seconds, they will be hidden again.

3 Scroll the displayed image

- Some images may not appear.
- Select an image from *Pictures* folder list screen; Image Viewer activates automatically.

Viewing Graphics/Animation

View graphics/animation in Portrait or Landscape view.

- This guide illustrates operational procedures in Portrait view.

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location

2 Select a file

3 ▶
- Tap ❚❚ to pause.
- Tap ⟳ to replay.

- View SWF files in Data Folder.
- Some files may not appear.
- Selecting a compatible file from Data Folder automatically activates Flash® Viewer.

Zooming Image in/out

1 **Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select an image**

2 **⌖ → ⌖/⌖ to adjust zoom level**

- Alternatively, tap ⌖ → ⌴/⌴ to adjust zoom level.

3 **Tap OK**

- Tap ▣ to fit the displayed image to the screen height. Tap ▤ to fit the displayed image to the screen width.

Advanced
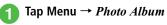
⚠ **Advanced Settings** ☞P.2-35
- Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

Using Photo Album

View JPEG still images in handset or Memory Card. To view files in Photo Album, hold handset sideways.

1 **Tap Menu → *Photo Album***

2 **Select a folder**

3 **Select a file**

- Some files may not appear.
- In folder list or file list, drag folder or file to scroll the screen. Alternatively, tilt handset.
- In file list, tap Switch layout to toggle 2 image view and 4 image view.
- Tap a part of the image to enlarge, and scroll the image to view. To back to the normal view, tap the outside of the image or press <kbd>CLEAR</kbd>.

Advanced

🔍 Advanced Settings ☞P.2-36
- Setting Displayed Still Image to Wallpaper etc
- Sending Displayed Still Image
- Editing Displayed Still Image
- Using Oekaki anime with Displayed Still Image
- Deleting Displayed File

Managing Files/Folders

Creating Folders

Create sub-folder in Default folders.
Use *Set secret* to hide created folder.

1. **Tap Menu → *Data Folder***

2. **Select default folder to create a sub-folder**

3. **Tap More → *Manage* → *Create folder***
   - If there is no sub-folder or file in the folder, menu in Toolbar varies.

4. **Enter name**

- New folder cannot be created in a created folder.

Renaming File/Folder

1. **Tap Menu → *Data Folder***

2. **Select default folder → Tap More → *Manage* → *Rename***

3. **Select file or sub-folder to rename**

4. **Enter name**

- Protected files cannot be renamed.

Moving File/Folder

When Memory Card is inserted, move files or folders between 930SC (Phone) and Memory Card.

1. **Tap Menu → *Data Folder***

2. **Select default folder → Tap Move → *Folders* or *Files***

3. **Check files or sub-folders to move → Tap Move**

4. **Select a destination folder**
   - If Memory Card is inserted, tap 📱/📇 to switch between the handset and Memory Card.

- Protected files cannot be moved.
- If target file/folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/folder name.
- To move a file set for Wallpaper or Ringtone to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to release the setting and move the file. When moving multiple or all files, choose *No* to move only files without set functions. Press `CLEAR` to cancel moving.

Note

- **Downloaded files may not appear/play properly if moved to another device or when a different USIM Card is inserted in 930SC.**
- **Nontransferable and unusable files (✕), protected files (🔒), or nontransferable and Copy protected files (🔏 or 🔏) cannot be moved to Memory Card.**

Copying Files/Folders

Copy a file or folder and paste in the same or another folder. When Memory Card is inserted, copy folders between 930SC and Memory Card.

1. **Tap Menu → *Data Folder***

2. **Select default folder → Tap Copy → *Folders* or *Files***

3. **Check files or sub-folders to copy → Tap Copy**

4. **Select a destination folder**
   - If Memory Card is inserted, tap 📱/📇 to switch between the handset and Memory Card.

- When pasting files/folders in the same location as the original, numbers such as "_001" are automatically added to pasted file/folder names.
- When target file/folder with the same name exists, edit the name of the file/folder. Text entry window appears to enter new name.

Note

- **Nontransferable files cannot be copied.**

2-24

Deleting Files/Folders

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Tap Delete

2 Check files or sub-folders to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

- If *Mark all* is selected, enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*.

- When deleting a file that is set to a function or protected, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to cancel the setting and delete the file. When deleting multiple files, choose *No* to delete only files not set to functions and unprotected files.

- When deleting files with Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete both file and Content Key.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.2-36

- Editing Image with Still Image
- Using Oekaki anime with Still Image
- Viewing Slide Show
- Sending Files
- Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth®
- Sorting Files
- Deleting Content Key
- Setting Secret in Sub-folder
- Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily
- Activating Camera Mode
- Activating Video Mode
- Recording Sound
- Setting & Canceling File Lock
- Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.
- Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode
- Registering vFile to Other Functions

Face Link

Saving Face Link Data

Link Phonebook information to portrait still image, to make a call or send messages from image.
Up to 5 Phonebook information can be linked to 1 still image.

Capturing and Setting Still Images

1 ⬜ (2+ seconds)

2 🔧 → *Photo* → Under *Face link display, On*

3 ⬜

- Available only when Face Link is *On*.
- If captured image is recognized, frame appears.

- If Face Link has been saved, name appears. If not, *Unknown* appears.
- If captured image is not recognized, frame does not appear. The image is saved and capture window reappears.

4 Tap Face Link to which to link Phonebook entry

5 Search and select Phonebook entry (➲P.2-16)

Adding Data to Saved Image

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures*

2 Select a file

3 Tap More → *Face link setting*

4 Tap Add face link

5 Drag and drop frame onto image

6 Stretch frame corner to adjust size

7 Tap OK

8 Search and select Phonebook entry (➲P.2-16)

- For an image that is recognized as Face Link but is not linked to data, tap *Unknown* after Step **3**, and select Phonebook entries to link the data.
- After Step **3**, tap More → *View phonebook* to view Phonebook entry details linked to Face Link.
- Memory Card files cannot be set as Face Link.

Using Face Link

Make a call or send message from Face Link image.

Make Calls & Send Messages from Saved Image

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures*

2 Select a file → Tap More → *Face link setting* → Tap Call

- If multiple Face Links are set, tap Call and Face Link to use.

3 **Make a call or send a message**

■ **To make a Voice Call**
Voice call

■ **To make a Video Call**
Video call

■ **To send a message**
S! Mail → (❷P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❺)

■ **To send an SMS**
SMS → (❷P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❺)

•If Face Link image is set as Wallpaper, Face Link is active in Standby. In Standby, press ⌕ → Tap Face Link to use it, then perform Step **3**.

Send Data of Saved Face Link via Message

1 **Tap Menu →** *Data Folder* **→** *Pictures*

2 **Select a file → Tap More →** *Face link setting*

3 **Tap More →** *Send via message* **→ Confirmation appears,** *Yes* **or** *No*

•Choose *Yes* to attach image and Phonebook entry, choose *No* to attach only image.

4 **Tap Send (❷P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)**

Advanced

🔍 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.2-39

● Setting Face Link Image to Wallpaper etc
● Viewing Other Face Link Images Linked to Data

Memory Card

930SC is compatible with microSD™ and microSDHC™ Memory Card. Purchase microSD™ or microSDHC™ Memory Card to use Memory Card-related handset functions.

•SoftBank recommends 64, 128, 256, 512 MB, 1, 2, or 4* GB cards.
 * microSDHC™ Memory Card only.

Note

•**Protect important information**
 Memory Card files may be lost or damaged by accident or malfunction. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost or altered information.
•**Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.**

Precautions

- Use only recommended Memory Card. Other Memory Cards may not perform properly.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Keep a Memory Card away from dust, high humidity, or excessive heat.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- A Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.
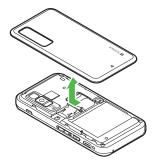
Inserting & Removing

Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a Memory Card.

Inserting

1 **Open Battery Cover**
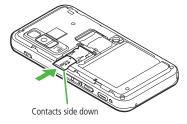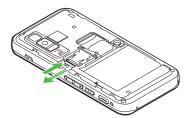
2 **With contacts down, insert Memory Card until it clicks**

Contacts side down

3 **Close Battery Cover**

Basic Operations

2

2-28

Removing
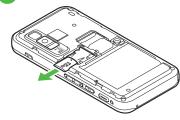
1 **Open Battery Cover, gently push down on card until it clicks**

2 **Card pops out; remove it**

3 **Close Battery Cover**

● If Memory Card Data Folder is open when Memory Card is removed, Phone Data Folder appears.

Note

● **Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing Memory Card; may damage Memory Card or handset.**
● **Take care not to lose removed Memory Card.**
● **Avoid touching/damaging Memory Card contacts when inserting/removing it.**
● **Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed; may damage handset/card or result in damaged/lost files.**

Advanced

⚒ Settings

● Check Memory Card details (☞P.13-26)
● Rename Memory Card (☞P.13-26)
● Format Memory Card (☞P.13-26)
● Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card (☞P.13-26)

Viewing Memory Status

View the following information.

● Status of mail boxes
● Status of memory in Data Folder
● Status of Calendar or Tasks items registered
● Status of memory in Notepad
● Status of Phonebooks (Handset and USIM Card)

1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory status***

Memory status
Messaging
Data Folder
Calendar/Tasks
Notepad
Phonebook

2 View each item

■ **To view Messaging status**

Messaging
● Received, Drafts, Sent and Unsent Mail memory appears by Size. Select *Count* from pulldown menu to see Mail memory by Count.
● USIM Card SMS appears by Count only.

■ **To view Data Folder status**

Data Folder → *Phone memory* or *Memory card*

■ **To view Calendar or Tasks status**

Calendar/Tasks

■ **To view Notepad status**

Notepad

■ **To view Phonebook**

Phonebook

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.2-39
● Deleting Registered/Saved Data

🔧 **Settings**
● Confirm total or remaining Phone Memory (☞P.13-26)
● Clear Phone Memory (☞P.13-26)
● View Memory status (☞P.13-26)

🔧 Advanced Settings

Standby Window

Enlarging and Viewing Still Image

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper* → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Zoom → 🔘 or 🔘 to adjust zoom level → Tap Set
● To restore the default, tap Undo.

Rotating Still Images

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper* → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Rotate → 🔘 or 🔘 → Tap Set
● To restore the default, tap Undo.

Editing Slide Show

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper* → *Slide show*

■ **To replace image**
Select image to change → *Replace* → Select a file location → Select an image → Tap Save → *Yes* or *No*

■ **To change image order**
Tap Change order → Drag image to desired position → Tap OK → Tap Save → *Yes* or *No*

■ **To delete image**
Select image to delete → *Reset* → *Yes* → Tap Save → *Yes* or *No*
● Choose *Yes* to fit image to Display, or *No* for original proportion.

Text Entry

Adding Text to Templates

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Text templates* → Tap Add new → Enter text
● Save up to 70 characters per template.

Editing Text Template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Text templates* → Tap template to edit → Edit text

Deleting Text Template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Text templates* → Tap Delete → Check templates to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*
● If *Mark all* is selected, enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*.

Specifying Range to Copy/Cut

In text entry window, tap Edit → *Copy* or *Cut* → Tap the first character of the range to cut/copy and tap Start point → Tap the last character to specify the range → Tap End point
● To copy or cut all text in text entry window, tap All.
● Copied or cut text remains even after powering off.

Pasting Copied or Cut Text

In text entry window, move cursor to the position to paste → Tap Edit → *Paste*

Undoing Text Entry

In text entry window, tap Edit → *Undo*

• In Kanji/Kana entry mode, undo operations immediately after performing such as *Cut*, *Paste*, or *Delete*. Undoing conversion is also available.

Enlarging Enter Text Field

In text entry window, 🔲

Entering E-mail Address & URL Quickly

In text entry window for E-mail Address or URL, tap More → *Insert* as required → *Quick address list* → Select an item

User's Dictionary

Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Phone settings* → User's *dictionary* → *Edit dictionary* → Tap Delete → Check entries to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

• If *Mark all* is selected, enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*.

Resetting User's Dictionary

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User's dictionary* → *Reset learning* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

• In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Conversion* → *Reset Learning* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*.

Phonebook

Adding Information to Phonebook Entry

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap New entry

■ **To save Group**

　🎵　→ Tap Group field → Select an item → Tap Save

■ **To set Secret mode**

　🎵　→ Tap Secret mode field → *On* or *Off* → Tap Save

■ **To save Birthday**

　🎵　→ Tap Birthday field → Enter Birthday → Tap Save

■ **To save Blood type**

　🎵　→ Tap Blood type field → Select an item → Tap Save

■ **To save Hobby**

　🎵　→ Tap Hobby field → Enter Hobby → Tap Save

■ **To save Company**

　🏠　→ Tap Company field → Enter Company → Tap Save

■ **To save Job title**

　🏠　→ Tap Job title field → Enter Job title → Tap Save

■ **To save Address**

⎡ 🏠 ⎤ → Tap Address field → Tap Zip code field → Enter Zip code → Tap Country field → Enter Country name → Tap Province field → Enter Province name → Tap City field → Enter City name → Tap Street field → Enter Street name → Tap Additional information field → Enter Additional information → Tap OK → Select an item → Tap Save

■ **To save URL**

⎡ 🏠 ⎤ → Tap Homepage field → Enter URL → Select an item → Tap Save

■ **To save Memo**

⎡ 🏠 ⎤ → Tap Memo field → Enter Memo → Tap Save

• Items other than Group are unavailable in USIM Card Phonebook.

Setting Incoming Image to Phonebook Entry

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap New entry → 🖼

■ **To set from saved still image**

Pictures → Select a file → Tap Save

• With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.

■ **To set by capturing still image**

Take photo → Capture still image → Tap Save → Tap Save

■ **To cancel set incoming image**

Off → Tap Save

• If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or ringtone, copy file to 930SC first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to 930SC first confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.

Linking Phonebook Information to Still Image as Face Link

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap New entry → ⎡ 🎵 ⎤ → Tap Face Link field → Tap a part where no image is set

■ **To link to saved still image**

Pictures → Select a file → Tap Face Link to link → Tap OK → Tap Save

■ **To capture still image to link**

Take Photo → Capture still image → Tap Face Link to link → Tap OK → Tap Save

■ **To unlink Face Link**

Off → Tap OK → Tap Save

• To change saved Face Link, tap Face Link field → Tap an image to change → *Release* → Perform link operation.

• To unlink saved Face Link, tap Face Link field → Tap an image to unlink → *Reset* → Tap OK → Tap Save.

Setting Ringtone to Phonebook Entry

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap New entry →
🎵 → Tap Ringtone settings field

■ **To set Ringtone for Voice Call or Video Call**
Voice call or *Video call* → Select a file location
→ Select a file → Tap OK → Tap Save

■ **To set Ringtone for Message or S! Friend's Status**
Messages or *S! Friend's Status* → Select a file
location → Select a file → Tap Duration field →
Enter duration → Tap OK → Tap Save

● While selecting a file, tap ▶ to playback the file.
● If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or
ringtone, copy file to 930SC first confirmation
appears. If file is copy protected, move file to 930SC
first confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete
setting.

Setting Vibration to Phonebook Entry

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap New entry →
🎵 → Tap Vibration settings field → Select an
item → Select vibration pattern → Tap OK → Tap
Save

● While selecting a vibration pattern, tap ▶ to view
the pattern.

Creating Message from Phonebook

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search and select
Phonebook entry to send message (●P.2-16) → ✉
beside phone number or E-mail address → *S! Mail* or
SMS → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ⑤, P.4-6 Sending
SMS Messages ⑤)

● To create S! Mail, select an E-mail address.

Opening Website from Phonebook

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search and select
Phonebook entry with homepage registered (●P.2-16)
→ ● beside homepage address to connect → *Yes*

● To connect the URL with PC site browser, tap *PC
Site Browser*.

Sending Phonebook as vFile

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap Send

■ **To send via message**
Via message → Search and select Phonebook
entry to send (●P.2-16) → (●P.4-3 Sending S!
Mail ②)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → Check Phonebook entry to send
→ Tap Send → (●P.12-6 Sending ②)

■ **To send via infrared**
Via infrared → Check Phonebook entry to send
→ Tap Send (●P.12-3)

● In Entry Details window, tap More and select *Send*.

Copying Entries between Phone & USIM

Tap Phone → *Phone book*

■ **To copy selected**
Tap More → *Copy to USIM* or *Copy to Phone*
→ Check Phonebook entries to copy → Tap Copy
→ *Yes*

● When displaying Phonebook from both the
handset and USIM Card, tap More → *Copy
each entry* → 🔲 beside entry to copy → *Yes*.
● In Entry Details window, tap More and select
Copy to USIM or *Copy to Phone*.
● If search method is set to by group, search and
select Phonebook entry to copy → Tap More →
Copy to USIM or *Copy to Phone* → *Yes*.

■ **To copy Phonebook stored in both 930SC
handset and USIM Card at once**
Tap More → *Copy all* → Select an item → *Yes*

Specifying Saving Destination for Phonebook Entries

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap More → *Save
settings* → Select an item

Viewing USIM Card Service Number

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap More → *Service
number*

● The item *Service number* may not appear for some
USIM Card.

Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap More → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- If *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*, Secret entries appear for current session only.
- If search method is set to by group, tap *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK.

Checking Memory Status

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Tap More → *Memory status*

- To delete viewed memory, tap Delete (❺P.2-39 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Editing Phonebook

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search Phonebook and select entry → Tap Edit → (❺P.2-14 Creating New Entries ❷)

- To edit secret Phonebook entry, set *Secret mode* to *Show*.

Adding Phonebook Entry to Speed Dial

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search Phonebook and select entry (❺P.2-16) → Tap More → *Add to Speed dial* → Select a field to add the entry

Adding S! Friend's Status Member from Phonebook

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search Phonebook and select entry (❺P.2-16) → Tap More → *View S! Friend's Status* → Select phone number

Viewing S! Friend's Status

Tap Phone → *Phonebook* → Search and select an entry (❺P.2-16) → Tap More → *View S! Friend's Status* → Select a phone number

Creating and Saving vFiles

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search Phonebook and select entry (❺P.2-16) → Tap More → *Save to Data Folder* → Select an item → *Yes*

- Alternatively, save to *Memory card* if inserted.

Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth®

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → Search Phonebook and select entry (❺P.2-16) → Tap More → *Print via Bluetooth* → (❺P.7-11 Printing via Bluetooth® ❺)

Toggling Phonebook View between USIM & Phone

Tap Phone → *Phone book* → 🄑 → Select an item
- Change remains even if handset is powered off.

Enter and Save Phone Number

🄑 → Enter phone number → Tap Add to Phonebook

■ **To save new entry**
  New → (❺P.2-14 Creating New Entries ❷)
■ **To update entry**
  Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (❺P.2-16) → Enter each item (❺P.2-14)

- Alternatively, during a call, tap More and select *Add to phonebook*.
- Only Name, Reading, E-mail address, and Group can be entered in USIM Card entries.

Renaming Group

Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Group settings* → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select group to edit → Select Group name field → Enter group name → Tap Save

Changing Group Settings

Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Group settings* → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select group

■ **To set Incoming image**

 → Select an item → Select an incoming image → Tap Save

●If *Pictures* is selected, select a file.
●If *Take photo* is selected, take a still picture.

■ **To set Icon**

Tap Icon settings field → Select an icon → Tap Save

■ **To set Ringtone**

Tap Ringtone settings field → Select a call type → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap OK → Tap Save

●To set ringtones for *Messages* or *S! Friend's Status ringtone*, select a ringtone and then tap Duration field → Enter duration → Tap OK → Tap Save

■ **To set Vibration**

Tap Vibration settings field → Select a call type → Select vibration pattern → Tap OK → Tap Save

●For USIM Card group, only group name and icon can be set.
●Images and ringtones set for individual Phonebook entries take priority over those setting.

Account Details

Editing Account Details

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap Edit → (&P.2-14 Creating New Entries ❷)

Sending Account Details as vFile

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap Send

■ **To send via message**
Via message → (&P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → (&P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
Via infrared (&P.12-3)

Resetting Account Details

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap Reset → *Yes*

●All Account details other than phone number saved in USIM Card are reset.

Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap More → *Save to Data Folder* → Select an item → *Yes*

●The save location can be set to *Memory card* if inserted.

Printing with Bluetooth®-Compatible Printer

Tap Phone → *Account details* → Tap More → *Print via Bluetooth* → (&P.7-11 Printing via Bluetooth® ❹)

Viewing Files

Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select a file location → Tap More → *Download Content key* → Select a file → Follow onscreen instruction

Viewing Graphics/Animation in SWF

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Select a file

■ **To display Keypad**
Tap Keypad

■ **To toggle Full/Normal view**
Tap More → *Full view* or *Normal view*

■ **To change image quality**
Tap More → *Quality* → Select an item

Deleting File

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Select a file → ▥ → *Yes*

●If no tool icon is displayed, tap the screen.

Confirming File Details

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Select a file → ⓘ

●If no tool icon is displayed, tap the screen.

2

Basic Operations

2-35

Photo Album

Setting Displayed Still Image to Wallpaper etc

Tap Menu → *Photo Album* → Select a file location
→ Select a file → Tap Set as

■ **To set image to Wallpaper**
Wallpaper → Tap Set

■ **To set image to Incoming image**
Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select entry
(⊙P.2-16) → Tap Set

■ **To set image to Alternative picture**
Still picture → Tap OK

Sending Displayed Still Image

Tap Menu → *Photo Album* → Select a file location
→ Select a file → Tap Send

■ **To send via message**
Via message → (⊙P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → (⊙P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
Via infrared (⊙P.12-3)

Editing Displayed Still Image

Tap Menu → *Photo Album* → Select a file location
→ Select a file → Tap Edit → *Image editor* →
(⊙P.7-9 Editing Still Images ❹)

Using Oekaki anime with Displayed Still Image

Tap Menu → *Photo Album* → Select a file location
→ Select a file → Tap Edit → *Oekaki anime* →
(⊙P.7-10 Oekaki Anime ❸)

Deleting Displayed File

Tap Menu → *Photo Album* → Select a file location
→ Select a file → Tap Delete → *Yes*

File/Folder Management

Editing Image with Still Image

Tap Menu → Data folder → Select a file location →
Select a file → Tap Edit → *Image editor* → (⊙P.7-9
Editing Still Images ❹)

Using Oekaki anime with Still Image

Tap Menu → Data folder → Select a file location →
Select a file → Tap Edit → *Oekaki anime* → (⊙P.7-
10 Oekaki Anime ❸)

Viewing Slide Show

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Select a
file to view first → Tap More → *Slide show*

● To pause Slide show, tap the screen and ⏸.

● To view next/previous data, tap ⏮ or ⏭.

Sending Files

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Tap More → *Send*

■ **To send via message**
Via message → Select a file (●P.4-3 Sending S!
Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → Check file to send → Tap Send
→ (●P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
Via infrared → Check file to send → Tap Send
(●P.12-3)

Printing Still Images via USB or Bluetooth®

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Tap More → *Print*

■ **USB**
Via USB → Check file to print → Tap Print →
(●P.7-12 Printing via USB ❹)

■ **Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → Check file to print → Tap Print
→ (●P.7-11 Printing via Bluetooth® ❹)

Sorting Files

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Tap More → *Sort by* → Select an item
● Sort by following order.
  - Descending order of date (*Date*)
  - File type (*Type*)
  - File name (*Name*)
  - Ascending order of file size (*Size*)
  - Title (*Title*)
  - Content Key status (*Content key type*)
● Folders appear at the top of list.
● When selecting *Type*, files are sorted in alphabetical
  order by file extension.
● When selecting *Name*, files are sorted in order of
  numerics → alphabets → Japanese syllabary.
● Files sorted by *Title* are Ring songs・tones,
  Music, *Videos*, and *Graphic Mail templates*.
● *Graphic Mail templates* files cannot be sorted by
  Type.
● When selected *Content key type*, files appear as
  follows: Unrestricted → Nontransferable → Copy
  Protected (Content key valid) → Copy Protected
  (Content Key expired) → Invalid Nontransferable.

Adding Sound Files or Video Files to Playlist

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Ring songs・tones,
Music,* or *Videos* → Tap More → *Manage* → *Add
to playlist* → Check files to add → Tap OK → Select
a playlist
● To create a new playlist and add files to it, tap Create
  on the screen where you add files.

Managing Content Key in Data Folder

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Tap More → *Manage* → *Download Content key* →
Select Content Key to view
● When a folder containing a Content Key is opened,
  all Data Folder/Memory Card Content Keys appear.
● If no files require Content Key, *Download Content
  key* does not appear.

Deleting Content Key

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Tap More → *Manage* → *Download Content key* →
Tap Delete → Check Content Key to delete → Tap
Delete → *Yes*

Setting Secret in Sub-folder

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a sub-folder location to set secret → Tap More → *Set secret* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select a folder to set secret → Tap OK

● To release the secret setting, uncheck them.

Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a folder location → Tap More → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Activating Camera Mode

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Pictures* → Tap More → *Take photo*

● If there is no data saved in *Pictures* folder, tap Take photo.

Activating Video Mode

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Videos* → Tap More → *Record Video*

● If there is no data saved in *Videos* folder, tap Record Video.

Recording Sound

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Ring songs・tones* → Tap More → *Record sound*

● If there is no data saved in *Ring songs・tones* folder, tap Record sound.

Setting & Canceling File Lock

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Tap More → *Lock/Unlock* → of a file to lock → Tap OK

● To release the lock, tap .

● Set file lock to restrict renaming, moving, or deleting.

Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Set as

■ **To set image to Wallpaper**
Wallpaper → Preview the image → Tap Set

■ **To set image to Incoming image**
Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select entry (●P.2-16) → Tap Set

■ **To set image to Alternative picture**
Still picture → Tap OK

● If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or ringtone, copy file to 930SC first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to 930SC first confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.

Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location → Select a file → Tap Stop → Tap Set as

■ **To set to Ringtone for each function**
Voice ringtone, Video ringtone, Message ringtone, S! Friend's status ringtone, Missed call notification ringtone, S! Quick News ringtone, Delivery report ringtone

■ **To set to Ringtone for Phonebook**
Caller ringtone → Search Phonebook and select entry

● If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or ringtone, copy file to 930SC first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to 930SC first confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.

● Only copy protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However, copyrighted files with play count restriction cannot be set.

Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Select a file → Tap Stop → Tap Set as

■ **To set to Ringtone for each function**
   Voice ringtone or *Video ringtone*
■ **To set to Ringtone for Phonebook**
   Caller ringtone → Select Phonebook entry to set
   (©P.2-16)

● Only copy protected MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp) AAC, AAC+,
or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However,
copyrighted files with play count restriction cannot
be set.

Registering vFile to Other Functions

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Tap More → *Register to* → Select an item → Select a
file

● Register a vCard or vCalendar files saved in Data
Folder to Phonebook or Calendar.

Face Link

Setting Face Link Image to Wallpaper etc

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Select a file → Tap Set as

■ **To set image to Wallpaper**
   Wallpaper → Tap Set
   ● When you edit Wallpaper such as zoom or rotate,
   Face Link is released.
■ **To set image to Incoming image**
   Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select entry
   (©P.2-16) → Tap Set
■ **To set image to Alternative picture**
   Still picture → Tap OK

Viewing Other Face Link Images Linked to Data

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Select a file → Tap More → *Face link setting* → Tap
Link image

● All images linked to the saved data appear.

Setting Face Link Frame to Caller ID Image

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Select a file → Tap More → *Face link setting* → Tap
More → *Set as* → *Caller ID* → Search Phonebook
and select entry (©P.2-16) → Tap Set

● The image is cut by Face Link frame and set to Caller
ID image.

Memory Status

Deleting Registered/Saved Data

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* →
Memory status → Select data → Tap Delete →
Select data to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

● If *Mark all* is selected, tap Delete → Enter Phone
Password → Tap OK → *Yes*.
● Delete Mailbox messages, Data Folder files, or
Calendar/Tasks or Phonebook entries.
● If file(s) are locked or set for another function, a
confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete all files.
Choose *No* to delete all other files only.

Calling

3

Making a Call

See "Using Phonebook" (🔗P.2-16) to make a call from Phonebook, or see "Making a Video Call" (🔗P.3-5) to make a Video Call.

1 ⌐ → **Enter a phone number including area code**

```
090********

┌─────────────────────┐
│  ↵      └      Clear │
│  1      2      3     │
│  4      5      6     │
│  7      8      9     │
│  P·X    +0     #     │
│ Call  Video  Add to  More │
│       call  phonebook    │
└─────────────────────┘
```
Phone Number Entry Window

2 **Confirm entered phone number** → ⌐ **or tap Call**

3 **To end the call,** ☎

● To correct entered digit, tap ↵ / └ to move cursor to the digit to be deleted, and tap Clear or press CLEAR. Touch and hold Clear or press CLEAR for 1+ seconds to delete all.

● To enter *P* (pause), tap P·X twice. To enter *+* (International Code), touch and hold +0.

● When the line is busy, press ☎ to end the call and try again later. If *Auto redial* (🔗P.13-23) is *On*, number is automatically redialed. Tap Cancel or press ☎ to cancel redialing.

● If Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected, set *Earphone call* to *On*, to call specified phone number by pressing the switch of Stereo Earphone Microphone for 1+ seconds. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.

● To input numbers for automatic voice service guidance, press ⌐ to display Keypad and tap the numbers.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.3-19
● Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook
● Creating New Message Addressed to Entered Number
● Making International Calls from Japan
● Calling with Your Phone Number Shown
● Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Phonebook Window
● Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Call Log Window
● Rejecting and Disconnecting Incoming Call
● Setting Mute
● Switching to Speaker Phone
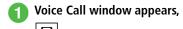
● Putting a Call on Hold
● Talking in Small Voice
● Switching Headset/Phone
● Searching Phonebook during Call
● Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook
● Viewing Call Log during Call
● Creating New Message during Call
● Sending Push Tones
● Recording Hearing Voice
● Creating Text Memo during Call

🔧 **Settings**
● Save International Code (☞P.13-20)
● Add/change/delete Country Number (☞P.13-20)
● Show or hide your own number when placing calls (☞P.13-23)
● Set 930SC to automatically redial busy numbers (☞P.13-23)

Receiving a Call

1 **Voice Call window appears,** 📞

2 **To end the call,** 📵

- If *Any key answer* is *On*, press any key except 📞 and 📵 to accept call.
- To place caller on hold, tap Hold answer or press 📞. To connect the call, tap Accept or press 📞.
- To adjust ringer volume, press 📞 or 📵.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to accept Voice Calls. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.

• Missed Call Window

Missed Call window appears for unanswered calls. Tap View to view Received calls (➋P.3-8).

• Ringtone

Specify ringtones by Phonebook entry or Category (➋P.2-33, P.2-35). If not set, active Mode Setting applies (➋P.1-11).
If Secret mode is set to *Hide* when a call from a Secret entry is received, active Mode Setting applies.

• Incoming Call Window

If a caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears. If saved in Phonebook, name also appears. If caller hides Caller ID, *Withheld* appears.
If incoming image has been saved in Phonebook or for the group, the image also appears (➋P.2-32, P.2-35).
If Secret mode is set to *Hide* when a call from a Secret entry is received, only number appears.

• When you cannot answer a call

Use Call Forwarding or Voice Mail to handle calls. While handset rings/vibrates, tap Forward to forward the call to Voice Mail or designated number immediately (➋P.3-13, P.3-14). Alternatively, tap Record to record caller message on 930SC (➋P.3-4).

Advanced

📞 **Advanced Settings** ☞ P.3-19

🔧 **Settings**

- Set Side Keys to activate Reject Call or mute ringer (☞ P.13-16)
- Set Any key answer (☞ P.13-16)
- Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers (☞ P.13-22)
- Create or edit Black List (☞ P.13-22)
- Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers (☞ P.13-22)
- Accept or reject calls when number is withheld (☞ P.13-23)
- Accept or reject calls from payphones (☞ P.13-23)
- Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable (☞ P.13-23)

Answering Machine

Handset records up to three 15-second caller messages.

Activating & Canceling

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine*

2 Under *On/Off*, *On* or *Off*

- When *On*, 📼 appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, press `CLEAR` for 1+ seconds in Standby to activate/cancel Answering Machine.

Note

- **Answering Machine is not available if 930SC is powered off, out of the service area, or in Offline mode. In this case, use the optional Voice Mail service to handle missed incoming calls.**
- **At least 600 KB of free space of 930SC memory is required to use Answering Machine.**

Playing Recordings

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine* → *Play messages*

2 Select a voice file

- When a message is recorded, 📼 appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press `CLEAR` to play recorded message.

Deleting Recordings

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine* → *Play messages* → Tap Delete

2 Check a file to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Video Call

Getting Started

Exchange voice/video with compatible 3G handsets.

- You may experience a problem with sound quality when using Speaker Phone (❷P.3-21) with louder volume. Lower volume or using Stereo Earphone Microphone is recommended.
- Ambient noise may hamper voice quality. Use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Using Speaker Phone in public may disturb others; please mind your mobile manners.

Note

- **Video Calls to incompatible handsets may be disconnected; charges apply.**

Viewing Video Call Window

Video call

❶ **Large Image (Normally, Incoming Image)**
Tap here to switch to Small Display.

❷ **Video Call menu icons**
- 📷 : Toggle Internal/External Camera
- 📹 / 📹 : Stop or resume sending My Image
- 🔍 : Zoom
- 🔆 : Brightness
- 😊 : Effect

❸ The other party's name

❹ Phone number

❺ Call duration

❻ **Small Display (Normally, Outgoing Image)**
Tap here to switch to Large Image.

❼ **Status icon**
- 🎧 : Switch to Headset
- 🔇 : Set Mute my voice to On
- 🔇 / 🔊 : Speaker Off/On

Making a Video Call

Call via Phonebook entries/Call Log records or dial directly.

1. ⎯ → **Enter a phone number including area code**

2. **Tap Video call**

3. **To end the call,** ☎

- **When Video Call cannot be connected**
  When you are prompted, select *Retry* →*Voice call* or *Create message*; or Select *View contact details* to open Phonebook; *Add to phonebook* to save number to Phone or USIM Card.
  Select *Video call* to try to make a call again.

Advanced
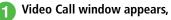
🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.3-21
- Showing or Hiding Caller ID
- Setting Mute
- Switching Speaker Phone/Handset Earpiece
- Putting a Video Call On Hold
- Toggling My Image
- Changing Image Size during Video Call
- Toggling Incoming Image Pause/Play
- Switching Headset/Handset Earpiece
- Creating Auto Answer List
- Deleting Entry in Auto Answer List
- Searching Phonebook during Video Call
- Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook
- Sending Message during Call
- Sending Push Tones
- Creating and Saving Text Memo in Video Call
- Viewing Phonebook Entry Details

🔧 **Settings**
- Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image (☞P.13-21)
- Adjust outgoing video quality (☞P.13-21)
- Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold without answering (☞P.13-21)
- Set Hold answer setting (☞P.13-22)
- Activate or cancel Speaker Phone during Video Call (☞P.13-22)
- Set Backlight (☞P.13-22)

- Set handset response when Video Call cannot be connected (☞P.13-22)
- Show or hide your own image for Video Calls (☞P.13-22)
- Show or hide your own number when placing calls (☞P.13-23)
- Set 930SC to automatically redial busy numbers (☞P.13-23)
- Enable or disable calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone (☞P.13-23)
- Adjust Earpiece volume (☞P.13-23)

Receiving a Video Call

1 Video Call window appears, 〔⌒〕

- Send My Image confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* or *No*.

2 To end the call, 〔⌒〕

- If *Any key answer* is *On*, press any key to receive the call, except ⌐ and ⌐.
- To place an incoming video call on hold without answering it, tap Hold answer or press 〔⌒〕. To release the hold and answer the video call, tap Answer or press 〔⌒〕 while holding it.
- Press ⌐ or ⌐ to adjust ringer volume while 930SC rings.
- If Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer Video call. Press again to end call.
- To disconnect an incoming video call without answering it, tap Forward or Reject.
- After pressing 〔⌒〕 in step **1**, My Image appears, but is not sent. Confirmation appears, choose *Yes* to send My Image, or *No* to send Alternative Picture. When Video Call connects, My Image or Alternative Picture appears in small display.
- To adjust volume, press ⌐ or ⌐.

- When sending image is canceled, alternative picture is sent to the other party.

Advanced

〔☜ Advanced Settings〕☞P.3-21

〔☜ Settings〕
- Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image (☞P.13-21)
- Adjust incoming video quality (☞P.13-21)
- Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold without answering (☞P.13-21)
- Set Hold answer setting (☞P.13-22)
- Activate or cancel voice muting for Video Call (☞P.13-22)
- Answer Video Call from specified party automatically (☞P.13-22)
- Create Auto Answer List (☞P.13-22)
- Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers (☞P.13-22)
- Create or edit Black List (☞P.13-22)
- Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers (☞P.13-22)
- Accept or reject calls when number is withheld (☞P.13-23)
- Accept or reject calls from payphones (☞P.13-23)
- Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable (☞P.13-23)
- Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction (☞P.13-23)
- Set Answering mode (☞P.13-24)

Speed Dial

Saving as Phone Numbers

Save up to ten frequently used phone numbers.

1. **Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Speed dial***

2. **Select number to save**

3. **Search Phonebook and select entry (◎P.2-16) → Select number**

- To change saved phone number, tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Speed dial* → Select entry → *Replace* → Search Phonebook and select entry (◎P.2-16) → Select number.
- To delete saved phone number, tap Menu→ *Phonebook* → *Speed dial* → Select entry → *Reset* → *Yes*.
- To delete all, tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Speed dial* → Tap Reset all → *Yes*.
- Secret entry phone numbers cannot be saved as Speed Dial.
- Setting a Speed Dial number to Secret cancels Speed Dial setting automatically.

Using Speed Dial

1. ⌐ → **Select from** ⌐0 **to** 9

2. ⌐

- Alternatively, after step 1, tap Speed dial and select *Voice call* to use speed dialing. Select *Video call* for video phone call, or select *S! Mail* to composite an S! Mail.

Call Time & Cost

Show charge after call **may not be available depending on your contract conditions. Also, *Set max cost limit* is not activated if *Show charge after call* is not available.**

Call settings menu includes items below.

Set	Settings
All calls	Confirm approximate total call time/cost or reset it.
Last call	Confirm approximate call time/cost of the previous call.
Data counter	Confirm approximate incoming/outgoing data volume or reset it.
Show charge after call	Set whether to show call time/cost after ending a call.
Set currency	Set or change currency.
Set max cost limit	Set the limit for call cost.

Checking Call Time & Cost

1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call time & cost***

2 **Select item**

- To reset item, tap Reset.

Advanced

Settings

- Check Call Time/Cost (☞P.13-20)
- Check last Call Time/Cost (☞P.13-20)
- Check Data Counter (☞P.13-20)
- Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls (☞P.13-20)
- Change Call Cost Currency (☞P.13-21)
- Set Call Cost Limit (☞P.13-21)
- Cancel Call Cost Limit (☞P.13-21)

Call Log Records

Select Received Calls or Dialed Calls. Confirm call type, number and call time & cost, or dial records directly. Call Log holds up to 500 Received Call and Dialed Call records each.

Viewing Call Log Records

1 **◯ (1+ seconds) → *Received* or *Dialed***

Received | Dialed

Sato Takuya
Dec. 15 15:30

Suzuki Kaori
Dec. 15 14:45

Kobayashi Da...
Dec. 15 13:37

Nakamura Mai
Dec. 15 11:14

Delete

Call Log (Recieved Calls)

2 **Select record**

- **Call Log Record Icons**
  - : Dialed Voice Call
  - : Dialed Video Call
  - : Received Voice Call
  - : Received Video Call
  - : Missed Voice Call
  - : Missed Video Call
  - : Rejected Voice Call
  - : Rejected Video Call
  - : Voice Mail Notification
  - : Received Call Notification

- If *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*, names do not appear in Call Log for Secret Phonebook entries.

Calling Call Log Records

1 `___` (1+ seconds) →
Received or *Dialed* → Select a
log → `\` beside the log

2 Make a call

■ **To make a Voice call**
Voice call

■ **To make a Video Call**
Video call

● Alternatively, tap `\` beside the designated log
entry in the list screen to make a call.

Deleting Call Log Records

1 `___` (1+ seconds) →
Received or *Dialed*

2 Tap Delete → Check records
to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

● To confirm and delete records one by one, after
Step **1**, select record → Confirm and tap Delete
→ *Yes*.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞P.3-23
● Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log
● Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Phonebook
● Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Black List

Global Roaming Service

Apply for Global Roaming Service beforehand. For
information on overseas usage or to apply for
service, see SoftBank Mobile Website:
http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/global_service/

Changing Network Mode

By default, network mode is supposed to be
selected automatically. Manual selection is also
available.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call
settings* → *Optional services*
→ *International call* → *Select
network*

2 Select network mode

■ **To activate automatically**
Automatic

■ **To activate manually**
Manual → *3G/GSM, 3G,* or *GSM*

●**Network Mode Setting**
Automatic:
　Automatically switches the mode according to
　network condition.
3G:
　Use within 3G/UMTS service areas in and
　outside Japan.
GSM:
　Use within GSM service areas outside Japan.
●Usually set *Automatic*.

Setting Network

Selecting Network to Access

Select network (service provider) for the area
where you use handset. *Manual* selection is also
available.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call
settings* → *Optional services*
→ *International call* → *Select
operator* → *Select Auto/
Manual*

2 Select network mode

■ **To set automatically**
Automatic

■ **To specify operator**
Manual → Select an item

Setting Preferred Network

Edit network list preferentially selected when
Automatic is set.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call
settings* → *Optional services*
→ *International call* → *Select
operator* → *Set priority*

2 Edit Preferred network list

■ **To select and add from Network
list**
Tap Add → *Network list* → Select a
network to insert from Network list
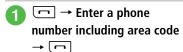
■ **To add network**
Tap Add → *New Network* → Tap
Country code field → Enter Country
code → Tap Network code field →
Enter Network code → Tap Network
name field → Enter Network name
→ Tap Network type field → *GSM*
or *3G* → Tap Add

- After you add a new network, it is added to the top of the network list.
- After Step ❶, tap Change order to change the preferred order. Touch and hold a network to move, make sure the network is selected, then drag it to desired location and tap OK.
- After Step ❶, tap Delete to delete the network. Tap 🗑 of the network to delete.
- **Items to set in *New Network* is as follows.**
  Country code: Up to three digits
  Network code: Up to three digits
  Network name: Up to 20 digits
  Network type: Select from GSM/3G

Making a Call Overseas

❶ ☎ → **Enter a phone number including area code** → ☎

❷ **Make a call**

■ **To make a call to Japan**
   To Japan

■ **To make a call to a country other than Japan**
   Other country → Select country to call

■ **To make a call to landline or handset in the country you stay**
   Keep number

- To make a call by directly entering Country number, touch and hold ⓪ to enter "+". Enter Country number, phone number excluding the first "0", and press ☎ to dial. To make a call to Italy, include the first "0" if any.
- If "+ Country code" is included in the beginning of phone number, Step ❷ is not required.

3

Calling

Optional Services

Available optional services are as follows.

Service	Description
Voice mail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voice Mail Center; access caller messages via handset from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere. ● Set Missed Call Notification to notify missed calls by SMS when handset is off or out-of-range (❂P.3-14).
Call forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls, automatically divert calls to a specified number.
Call waiting*	Put the line on hold to answer another line or alternate between lines. Or toggle lines among multiple lines simultaneously.

Service	Description
Conference Call*	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or talk on up to six parties simultaneously.
Call barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when making calls.

* A separate subscription is required to use this service.

Note

● **When *Out* appears, services are unavailable. For details on operations from landline phones or services, access Softbank website (http://www.softbank.jp).**

Voice Mail

According to the following conditions, handset forwards incoming voice Call to Voice Mail Center.

Forwarding Condition	Description
Always	Handset does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically. Missed Call does not appear.
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or handset is outside service area.

Note

● **Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be active at the same time.**
● **Activating Voice Mail cancels Call Forwarding.**

Setting Voice Mail

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Voice mail On*

2 Select an item

■ **To transfer immediately**
Always (0 sec.)

■ **To set duration before transfer**
No reply (5 to 30 sec.) → *5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 20 seconds, 25 seconds,* or *30 seconds*

- When *No reply (5 to 30 sec.)* is set, answer an incoming call in the duration, not to forward the call. Or tap Forwarding to forward immediately.

Canceling Voice Mail

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Deactivate all* → *Yes*

Note

- *Deactivate All* also cancels Call Forwarding.

Listening to Voice Mail Message
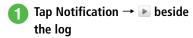
When a caller saves a Voice Mail message, a notification appears in Standby and 📭 appears at the top of Display.

Voice mail me... (1) — Indicated by Icons and Messages

Information Screen

When Notification Appears

Connect to Voice Mail Center as described below and follow voice guidance.

1 Tap Notification → ▶ beside the log

- To confirm the details of the message, tap View and select record.
- Tap Close to clear the notification without playing the message.

When Notification does not Appear

1 ⌐ → Enter "1416" → ⌐

- To enter numbers following the guidance, press ⌐ to display the keypad and tap them.
- If you delete a message you played following the guidance, 📭 disappears.

Missed Call Notification

Receive SMS for calls missed while handset is off or outside service area; or when caller saves message at Voice Mail Center while the line is engaged.
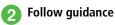
1 ⌐ → Enter "1414" → ⌐
  • To call from landline phone in Japan, enter "090-665-1414".

2 **Follow guidance**

• SMS notification is saved as Received call.
• Missed Call Notification is complimentary.

Advanced

🔧 Settings

● Forward all calls to Voice Mail (930SC does not ring) (☞P.13-19)
● Forward unanswered calls to Voice Mail (specify ring time) (☞P.13-19)
● Cancel Voice Mail/Call Forwarding (☞P.13-19)
● Confirm current Voice Mail/Call Forwarding settings (☞P.13-19)
● Listen to Voice Mail message (☞P.13-19)
● Set Missed Call Notification (☞P.13-19)

Call Forwarding

Forward incoming calls to a specified number in accordance with the predefined forwarding condition which you can set by call type (Voice Call or Video Call).

Note

• **Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be used at the same time.**
• **Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voice Mail previously activated.**

Activating Call Forwarding

Specify a forwarding number beforehand. Specify Forwarding number in, *Voice/Video call*, *Voice call*, or *Video call*.

1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Call forwarding On***

2 *Voice/Video call, Voice call,* or *Video call*

3 *Always (0 sec.)* or *No reply (5 to 30 sec.)*

4 **Set forwarding number**

■ **To set previously forwarded number**

  Last set number → Select previously forwarded number

■ **To set from Phonebook**

  Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (❷P.2-16) → Select phone number

■ **To set by entering phone number**

  Enter number → Enter phone number

  • To activate Call Forwarding with *No reply* set, select duration after Step ④.

• When *No reply (5 to 30 sec.)* is set, answer an incoming call in the duration, not to forward the call. Or tap Forward to forward immediately.

Canceling Call Forwarding

Cancel all Diverts services regardless of the condition.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Deactivate all* → *Yes*

Note

• Voice Mail service previously activated is also canceled.

Advanced

⚙ Settings

● Activate and set Forwarding (☞P.13-19)
● Cancel Voice Mail/Call Forwarding (☞P.13-19)
● Confirm current Voice Mail/Call Forwarding settings (☞P.13-19)

Call Waiting

A separate subscription is required to use this service. This function is only applicable to Voice Calls.

Activating & Canceling Call Waiting

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call waiting*

2 *On* or *Off*

• To check current status, select *Get status* in Step **2**.

Receiving a Second Call

When there is another incoming call during a call, a specific interrupt sound and display notifies. Place the current call on hold and answer the second call.

1 **When you hear the interrupt sound, tap Accept**

• You can skip Step **2** if you press 🔲 instead of tapping Accept.

2 *Hold active call*

• To disconnect the current call to answer the new incoming call, select *End active call*.
• To disconnect the both calls (the current call and the new call), select *End all calls*.

3 **To switch party to talk, tap Group call func → *Switch***

4 **End a call**

■ **To end selected call**
Tap Group call func → *End each call* → 🔴 beside the other party to finish talking with

■ **To end all calls**
Tap Group call func → *End all calls*

● When one party ends a call with another on hold, tap Answer to talk with the held party again.

● When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is set and the second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding destination or Voice Mail Center. When the forwarding condition is set to *Always*, the Call Waiting service is unavailable.

Advanced

⚙ Settings
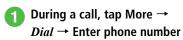
● Activate or cancel Call Waiting (☞P.13-19)
● Confirm current Call Waiting settings (☞P.13-19)

Group Call
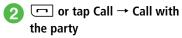
A separate subscription is required to use this service. Talk with a maximum of 6 parties simultaneously.

Making New Call during Call

When a new call is connected, first party is placed on hold.

1 During a call, tap More →
   ***Dial* → Enter phone number**

   ● To select from Phonebook, select *Phonebook* → Search and select Phonebook (●P.2-16) → Select Phone number.

2 ⌒ or tap Call → Call with
   the party

● Calling to another party besides the two is only available with Group call function (and is not available when any party is on hold).

Switching Party

1 While connected with
   multiple parties, tap Group
   call func → *Switch*

● When the connected party ends the call during Conference Call, a party on hold remains on-hold state. To talk with the party on hold, tap Answer and cancel on-hold.

Talking with All Parties

1 While connected with
   multiple parties, tap Group
   call func → *Change to group*

   call

   ● To talk with one party again, tap Group call func → *Change to private call* → 📞

● To end all calls, tap Group call func and select *End all calls*.

● When one party ends the call during Conference Call, continue talking with remaining parties.

Advanced

⚙ Advanced Settings ☞P.3-24

● Ending Selected Call
● Putting All Calls on Hold

Call Barring

Bar outgoing/incoming Voice, Video Calls or SMS by the conditions listed below.

	Item	Description
Outgoing call		
	Bar all outgoing calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to all but emergency numbers.
	Bar all international calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to numbers outside Japan.
	Bar international calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to numbers outside Japan and the country where you stay.
Incoming call		
	Bar all incoming calls	Blocks all incoming calls or SMS.
	Bar all roaming calls	Blocks all incoming calls or SMS outside Japan.

● Setting Call Barring requires Network Password (the 4-digit number dedicated to Call Barring service specified at the subscription). Network Password can be changed (●P.3-18).
● A message appears indicating that outgoing Call Barring is active. The message may appear after a while depending on service area.

Note

● **If incorrect Network Password is entered 3 consecutive times, Call Barring service is disabled. In this case, change Network Password and Center Access code. For details, contact Customer Service (●P.14-29).**
● **If Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is active, *Bar all outgoing calls* and *Bar All incoming calls* cannot be set (Call Forwarding and Voice Mail services override them).**

Restricting Outgoing/Incoming Calls

Set Call Barring for outgoing calls and/or incoming calls for each type of call (Voice, Video Calls, SMS)/transmission.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*

2 Select a restriction type

■ **For outgoing calls**
Outgoing call → *Bar all outgoing calls*, *Bar all international calls*, or *Bar international calls*

■ **For incoming calls**
Incoming call → *Bar all incoming calls* or *Bar all roaming calls*

3 *On* or *Off*

4 Enter Network Password → Tap OK

Canceling All Barring

Cancel all barring for outgoing or incoming calls.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*

2 *Cancel all barring*

3 Enter Network Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Checking Call Barring Status

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*

2 *Get status* → *All outgoing calls, All international calls, International calls, All incoming calls,* or *All roaming calls*

Changing Network Password

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring* → *Set security code*

2 Enter current Network Password in Old field → Tap OK

3 Enter new Network Password in New field → Tap OK

4 Enter new Network Password again in Cnf field → Tap OK

Advanced

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when calling from handset.

Showing & Hiding Caller ID

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Show my number*

2 *On* or *Off*

- After Step **1**, select *Get status* to confirm the current setting.
- Regardless of *Show my number* setting, you can show/hide your phone number every time when you make a call (⊘P.3-19).

Advanced

⚙ Advanced Settings

Call

Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook
🔲 → Enter a phone number including area code → Tap Add to Phonebook → (❷P.2-34 Enter and Save Phone Number)

Creating New Message Addressed to Entered Number
🔲 → Enter a phone number → Tap More → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (❷P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ⑤, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ⑤)

Making International Calls from Japan
🔲 → Enter a phone number including area code → tap More → *International call* → Select a country/Select *Enter Code* and enter Country number → *Japan* → Confirm phone number → 🔲
- A separate subscription is required for international calls. For details, contact Customer Service (❷P.14-29).
- Calls to SoftBank handset abroad is available only by the phone number, regardless of the country where the receiver stays.

Calling with Your Phone Number Shown
🔲 → Enter a phone number including area code → Tap More
■ **To hide phone number**
 Hide my ID → 🔲
■ **To show phone number**
 Show my ID → 🔲
- Without setting, calling follows *Show my number* setting.
- Alternatively, press 🔲 → Enter "186" → Enter phone number → 🔲, to make a call with your phone number shown.
- Alternatively, press 🔲 → Enter "184" → Enter phone number → 🔲, to make a call with your phone number hidden.

Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Phonebook Window
On phone number entry window, tap More → *Phonebook*

Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Call Log Window
On phone number entry window, tap More → *Call log*

Rejecting and Disconnecting Incoming Call
While handset is ringing, tap Reject
- The rejected call is recorded in Call Log.
- Alternatively, if *Side key* is set to *Reject*, press 🔼 or 🔽 for 1+ seconds to reject an incoming call.
- When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is not used, tap Forward while handset is ringing, to reject the incoming call. Message indicating "busy" appears on caller's handset before call is disconnected. If caller's handset is incompatible, call is simply disconnected.

Adjusting Earpiece Volume
During a call, 🔼 or 🔽
- Adjust Earpiece or Earphone volume. Setting remains even after powered off.

Setting Mute
During a call, tap Mute or Unmute

Switching to Speaker Phone
During a call, tap Speaker On
- To cancel Speaker Phone, tap Speaker Off during a call.

3-19

Putting a Call on Hold

During a call, tap Hold

- When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice. A subscription to Call Waiting or Group Call is required to use this function. If you do not subscribe to either service, this function is disabled.
- Tap Answer to reconnect the call.

Talking in Small Voice

During a call, tap More → *Whisper on* or *Whisper off*

- With *Whisper on*, the volume of sent sounds is raised on the other party's side.

Switching Headset/Phone

During a call, tap More → *Switch to headset* or *Switch to phone*

- Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use.

Searching Phonebook during Call

During a call, tap More → *Phonebook* → (●P.2-16 Searching Phonebook ❸)

Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook

During a call, tap More → *Add to Phonebook*

■ **To save new entry**
   New → (●P.2-14 Creating New Entries ❷)

■ **To update entry**
   Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (●P.2-16) → Enter each item (●P.2-14)

Viewing Call Log during Call

During a call, tap More → *Call log*

Creating New Message during Call

During a call, tap More → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❷)

Sending Push Tones

During a call, tap More → *Send DTMF* → Enter digits → Tap Send

- To search Phonebook, press *Send DTMF* and then tap Phonebook.

Recording Hearing Voice

During a call, tap More → *Record* → ■■ → ■■

- Record voice of up to 2 minutes during a call.
- To pause recording, tap ■■. Tap ■■ to resume recording; Tap Save to save recording up to paused point.
- Recorded sound file is saved to *Ring songs・tones* in Data Folder.
- If Call Waiting is subscribed, recording stops by another incoming call, and incoming call window appears.
- Recording stops automatically after the call is ended, and voice file is saved.

Creating Text Memo during Call

During a call, tap More → *Memo* → Enter text memo → Select an item

Video Call

Showing or Hiding Caller ID

🔲 → Enter a phone number including area code
→ Tap More

■ **To hide phone number**
Hide my ID → Tap Video call

■ **To show phone number**
Show my ID → Tap Video call

● Alternatively, press 🔲 → Enter "186" → Enter
phone number → Tap Video call, to make a call with
your phone number shown.

● Alternatively, press 🔲 → Enter "184" → Enter
phone number → Tap Video call, to make a call with
your phone number hidden.

Toggling Internal/External Camera

During Video Call, 📷

Toggling My Image Pause/Play

During Video Call, 🖼 or 🖼

Enlarging or Reducing My Image

During Video Call, 🔍 → Adjust Size

Adjusting Outgoing Image Brightness

During Video Call, 🖼 → Adjust Brightness

Adjusting Outgoing Image Color

During Video Call, 🖼 → Select an item

Setting Mute

During Video Call, tap Mute or Unmute

Switching Speaker Phone/Handset Earpiece

During Video Call, tap Loud speaker On or Loud
speaker Off

● A confirmation appears to set *Loud speaker on?*
Choose *Yes* to switch to Speaker phone call.

Putting a Video Call On Hold

During Video Call, tap Hold

● Alternative picture is sent during on hold and neither
party can hear the other's voice.

● To reconnect the call, tap Answer.

Toggling My Image

During Video call, tap More → *My image*

■ **To toggle My Image**
Camera

■ **To toggle Alternative picture**
Alternative picture On

■ **To select My Image**
Send picture → *Picture* → Select image to send
→ Tap OK

● With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected
from *Digital camera* folders.

Changing Image Size during Video Call

During Video Call, tap More → *Switch screen*

● Switch incoming image small and My image large, or
incoming image large and My image small.

Toggling Incoming Image Pause/Play

During Video call, tap More → *Pause incoming
image* or *Play incoming image*

Switching Headset/Handset Earpiece

During Video Call, tap More → *Switch to handset* or
Switch to phone

● Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in
use.

Setting Alternative Picture Instead of My Image

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* →

Alternative picture

■ **To restore default image**
Preset picture → Tap OK

■ **To select image from Data Folder**
Picture → Select image → Tap OK

● With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected
from *Digital camera* folder after *Pictures*
selected.

Adjusting Incoming Video Quality

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* →
Incoming video quality → Select an item

Adjusting Outgoing Video Quality

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* →
Outgoing video quality → Select an item

Setting On Hold Picture

During Video call, tap More → *Settings* → *Hold setting* → *Hold during call* or *Hold answer*

■ **To restore default image**

Picture → Tap OK

■ **To select image from Data Folder**

Pictures → Select image → Tap OK

• With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Digital camera* folder after *Pictures* selected.

Muting Handset Microphone

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → Under *Mute my voice*, *On* or *Off*

• Setting is not applied to the current Video Call. Effective from the next Video Call.

Switching Speaker Phone/Handset Earpiece

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → Under *Loud speaker*, *On* or *Off*

Adjusting Video Call Backlight Setting

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → Under *Backlight*, *On* or *Off*

• Set backlight during video Call. When *Off* is set, Display becomes dim.

Adjusting Call Retry Setting

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → *Retry with* → Select an item

Answering Voice Call from Specified Party Automatically

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → *Auto answer* → Under *On/Off*, *On* or *Off*

• When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

Creating Auto Answer List

During Video call, tap More → *Settings* → *Auto answer* → *Auto answer list* → Tap Add

■ **To Select from Phonebook**

Phonebook → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Search Phonebook and select entry (○P.2-16)

■ **To select from call log**

Call log → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Received* or *Dialed* → Select a log

■ **To enter phone number directly**

Direct input → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Enter phone number

• When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.

Deleting Entry in Auto Answer List

During Video call, tap More → *Settings* → *Auto answer* → *Auto answer list* → Tap Delete → Check phone number to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Showing/Hiding My Image

During Video Call, tap More → *Settings* → Under *Show my image*, *On* or *Off*

• Setting is not applied to the current Video Call. Effective from the next Video Call.

Searching Phonebook during Video Call

During Video Call, tap More → *Phonebook* (○P.2-16 Searching Phonebook ❸)

Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook

During Video Call, tap More → *Add to phonebook*

■ **To save new entry**

New → (○P.2-14 Creating New Entries ❷)

■ **To update entry**

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (○P.2-16) → Enter each item (○P.2-14)

Sending Message during Call

During Video Call, tap More → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (○P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❷)

Sending Push Tones

During Video Call, tap More → *Send DTMF* → Enter digits → Tap Send

• To search Phonebook, select *Send DTMF* and then tap Search to search Phonebook and select entry (○P.2-16).

Creating and Saving Text Memo in Video Call
During Video Call, tap More → *Memo* → Enter text memo → Select an item

Viewing Phonebook Entry Details
During Video Call, tap More → *Details*

Call Log Records

Sending Message from Call Log Records
⌒ (1+ seconds) → *Received* or *Dialed* → Select a record → Tap ✉ beside phone number or E-mail address → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (➲P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❺, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❺)
● S! Mail can also be created by tapping ✉ on the list.

Adding International Code and Country Number to Call Log Record Numbers
⌒ (1+ seconds) → *Received* or *Dialed* → Select a record → 📞 beside phone number → *International call* → Select a country/Select *Enter code* to enter a country number → Select a country → Confirm the phone number → ⌒

Showing Caller ID when Calling Call Log Record
⌒ (1+ seconds) → *Received* or *Dialed* → Select a record → 📞 beside phone number
■ **To hide phone number**
Hide my ID → ⌒
■ **To show phone number**
Show my ID → ⌒

Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log
⌒ (1+ seconds) → *Received* or *Dialed* → Select a record → Tap View phonebook

Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Phonebook
⌒ (1+ seconds) → *Received* or *Dialed* → Tap Add to phonebook → (➲P.2-15 Saving from Call Log Records ❸)

Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Black List
⌒ (1+ seconds) → *Received* or *Dialed* → Select a record → Tap Add to black list → *Yes*

Group Call

Ending Selected Call

During Group call, tap Group call func → *End each call* → 📞 to disconnect

Putting All Calls on Hold

During Group call, tap Group call func → *Hold all calls*

- To cancel on-hold, tap Group call func and select *Answer*.

Messaging

4

Messaging Basics

Use S! Mail and SMS services on 930SC.

S! Mail

Exchange long text messages with SoftBank and other e-mail compatible handsets, PCs and other mobile devices; attach media files for multimedia messaging.

Use Graphic Mail or Feeling Mail to add color and other graphic elements to S! Mail message text.

● Exchange Feeling Mail only with compatible handsets.

● A separate subscription is required to use S! Mail and receive E-mail.

SMS

Exchange short text messages with SoftBank handsets; use handset numbers as address.

Entry items and character limits vary as follows.

Item		S! Mail[1]	SMS
Entry Item			
	Address	Yes	Yes
	Subject	Yes	No
	Attachment	Yes	No
	Text	Yes	Yes

Item	S! Mail[1]	SMS
Character Limits	Up to 15,000 double-byte/ 30,000 single-byte characters (30 KB)[2]	Up to 70 single-/ double-byte characters, or up to 160 single-byte alphanumerics[3]

1 Send up to 300 KB including address, subject, message text, attachments, etc. (same limit applies to replies and forwarded S! Mail messages).
2 Entry limit varies by attachment size etc.
3 When *Char-code* is set to *GSM 7 bit* (◎P.13-5).

● If Retry Function is enabled, undeliverable mail (handset off or out-of-range) are saved at Mail Service Center and delivery reattempted regularly.

Note

● **Messages created on 930SC may not appear on other party's handset correctly.**
● **Received Hangul messages are viewable. Use only SMS to create new Hangul messages. Replying to/forwarding received S! Mail automatically deletes Hangul characters.**
● **Hangul may be deleted from sent SMS or appear as spaces on other party's handset.**

Custom Mail Address

Change the alphanumerics appearing before @ of handset Mail Address (Account Name). Default Account Name consists of random alphanumerics. For details, access SoftBank Website (http:// www.softbank.jp).

Changing Mail Address

Customizing Mail Address may help reduce spam.

1 Tap Messaging → *Settings* → *Custom mail address*

2 Select *English* and follow onscreen instructions

Confirming New Mail Address

After Mail Address is changed, SoftBank sends a confirmation message.

1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select message from Information → *Yes* or *No*

Advanced

Settings

● Customize or change handset mail address (☞P.13-2)

Sending S! Mail

Example: Sending S! Mail to a Phonebook entry

1 Tap Messaging → *Create new*

```
Create msg [OKB]
👤 Recipient      ›
📄 Subject        ›
📎 Attach         ›

   [Enter Text]



Send  Save  Settings  More
 ●     ●      ●        ●
```
Text Entry Window

2 Tap Recipient field

3 *From phonebook* → Select entry (☞P.2-16 Searching Phonebook **3**)

4 Select number or address

5 Tap Subject field → Enter subject

6 Tap Enter Text field → Enter text

7 Tap Send

● Alternatively, in Standby, touch and hold Messaging to open Create Message window.
● Enter SoftBank handset numbers or mail addresses in Recipient field. Add up to 20 recipients.
● If `CLEAR` or `🔚` is pressed with address, subject or text entered, or a file attached, an exit confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to exit. Alternatively, if `CLEAR` is pressed, select *Save* to save to Drafts before exiting.
● Sent mail is saved in Sent msg. or Unsent. If *Auto delete* (☞P.13-2) is *On* and memory full, sent messages are deleted, oldest first (except protected), automatically to make room for new ones. If *Auto delete* is *Off* or Unsent full, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.

Note

● **Received S! Mail Hangul is viewable, but is deleted from replies or forward messages (Hangul cannot be used to create S! Mail).**

Attaching Files

Send up to 300 KB including address, subject and text.
Attach up to 20 files per S! Mail message.

• During message creation, message size appears next to *Create msg.* in Create Message window.

Note

• **Some attachments may be lost depending on recipient handset status. For supported file types, access Softbank Website (http://www.softbank.jp).**
• **When attaching a video, select a file recorded in *For S! Mail* (○P.7-8). If file is incompatible, a warning message appears.**

Attaching Files from Data Folder etc.

Attach media files directly, or Phonebook/Calendar entries or Account details as vCard or vCalendar.

1 **Tap Messaging → *Create new* → Tap Attach field**

2 **Attach file**

■ **Data Folder files**
Data Folder → Select a file location → Select a file
• If you are prompted to resize the image, select a size.

■ **Phonebook entries (vCard)**
Phonebook details → Search Phonebook and select an entry (○P.2-16) → Tap Add

■ **Calendar entries (vCalendar)**
Calendar item → From pulldown menu, select *Schedule* or *Tasks* → Select an entry

■ **Account details (vCard)**
Account details → Tap Add

• To add files, tap Attach field → *Add file*, and repeat Step 2.
• When files are attached, file type indicators and file names appear in Attached file list.
  📷 : Image   🎵 : Sound
  🎥 : Video   📅 : vCalendar
  👤 : vCard   📄 : Other

Note

• **When attaching Account details, Hobby cannot be attached.**

Creating Graphic Mail

Example:

- Changing font size, background color
- Inserting image, pictograms in Data Folder
- Scrolling characters left and right
- For other items, see "Sending S! Mail" (➋P.4-15).

1 Tap Messaging → *Create new* → Tap Enter Text field

2 Tap More → *Graphic Mail*

Graphic Mail Entry Window

3 *Size* → *Large, Normal,* or *Small* → Enter text

- To continue, tap Add art.

4 Tap Add art → *Background color*

5 Select a background color

6 Tap Add art → *Image*

7 *Pictures* → Select a file

- If Memory Card is inserted, select from *Digital camera* folder.
- To capture image to insert, select *Camera*.
- If Memory Card is inserted, select *Pictures* and tap 🔳 to select a Memory Card file.

8 Tap Add art → *My Pict* → Select a pictogram

9 Tap Add art → Tap Select area → Tap start character to modify → Tap Start point → Tap end character to modify → Tap End point → *Effect*

10 *Scroll*

11 *Right to left* or *Swing*

12 Tap Close → Tap OK

- In Graphic Mail entry window, tap Undo to undo most recent change.
- In Graphic Mail entry window, tap Cancel → *Yes* to cancel Graphic Mail and return message text only.
- *Screen mode* is not available.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞ P.4-15

- Viewing History Details
- Deleting History
- Inserting Information into S! Mail
- Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Setting Conversion
- Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts
- Sending Feeling Mail
- Resetting Feeling Setting
- Setting Message Actions
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
- Deleting All Text
- Viewing Graphic Mail
- Saving Graphic Mail as Template
- Using Template to Create S! Mail

🔧 **Settings**

- Request or cancel Delivery Report (☞ P.13-2)
- Insert or hide Signature (☞ P.13-2)
- Edit Signature (☞ P.13-2)

4

Messaging

4-5

- Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full (☞P.13-2)
- Show or hide transmission progress bar (☞P.13-2)
- Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden) (☞P.13-3)
- Set message sending priority (☞P.13-3)
- Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry (☞P.13-3)
- Set time to send a message via Mail Service Center (☞P.13-3)
- Select reply setting (☞P.13-4)
- Set "reply to" address (☞P.13-4)
- Change Message text font size (☞P.13-14)

Sending SMS Messages

Example: Sending SMS to a Phonebook entry.

1 Tap Messaging → *Create new SMS*

SMS [70]

👤 Recipient ▸

Enter Text

Send | Save to Drafts | To S!Mail | More

Text Entry Window

2 Tap Recipient field

3 *From phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select an entry (☞P.2-16 Searching Phonebook **3**)

4 Select a phone number

5 Tap Enter Text field → Enter text

6 Tap Send

- Enter SoftBank handset numbers in Recipient field. Add up to 20 Recipients.
- When entered text exceeds entry limit (☞P.4-2), S! Mail conversion confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to switch to S! Mail.
  When Hangul text is included, a confirmation to delete Hangul text appears. Choose *Yes* to delete Hangul text and switch to S! Mail.
- Sent mail is saved in Sent messages or Unsent. If *Auto delete* (☞P.13-2) is *On* and memory full, sent messages are deleted, oldest first (except protected), automatically to make room for new ones. If *Auto delete* is *Off* or Unsent full, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.4-19
- Confirming History Details
- Deleting History Logs
- Inserting Information into SMS
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Setting Conversion
- Saving SMS to Drafts
- Converting SMS to S! Mail
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending
- Deleting All Text
- Using Template to Send SMS

Received Messages

Viewing New Messages

When a message is received, notice appears in Standby. Number of messages appear.

● For S! Mail, an entire message including attachments is automatically received. Note that applicable charge will apply based on you contract conditions. You can also set not to receive an entire message automatically (❂P.4-8).

Information
New Message   (1) ——— Reception Number of Messages

Close

Information Window (Received Messages)

1 **Tap notification → Select a folder**

Received
Sato Takuya   12/15 15:30
Tomorrow's schedule
Nakamura M...   12/15 12:39
Meeting
Takahashi   —   12/14 11:12
Hello
Suzuki Kao...   12/13 09:53
I had a great time

Reply   Reply   Forward   More
        to all

Message List Window

2 **Select a new message**

◀ Received message 001 ▶
From: Sato Takuya [takuya@*****.jp]
Subject: Tomorrow's schedule
Date: Dec. 15 15:30

Let's go to the zoo tomorrow.

◀   ▲   Select   ▼   ▶

Reply   Reply   Forward   More
        to all

Message Window (S! Mail)

● If 3D Pictograms confirmation appears, select *Always*, *Only unread*, or *Disable*.

- **3D Pictograms**

  When viewing new/unread messages, message text appears in 3D animation.
  If *3D Pictogram* (●P.13-3) is set to other than *Disable*, 3D animation appears. After animation stops or Stop is tapped, Message window appears. Use Menu options in Message window.

- When a file is attached, a file name and thumbnail appear at the bottom of the message.

- If messages are received out of Standby, number of messages, sender numbers or mail addresses (names if saved in Phonebook), etc. scroll across Display top. Afterward ✉ appears (●P.1-3, P.13-3).

- When a Delivery Report arrives, 🗒 flashes and disappears. In Standby, a notification appears.

- Received mail is saved in Received messages. If *Auto delete* (●P.13-2) is *On* and memory full, received messages are deleted, oldest first (except protected), automatically to make room for new ones. If *Auto delete* is *Off*, memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.

Note

- In *Receiving options*; *Roaming auto settings*, if you select *Auto download*, take care to avoid high messaging charges when using handset overseas. *Auto download* is enabled (●P.13-4) by default; complete S! Mail messages automatically download to handset.

Retrieving Messages Manually

When *Receiving options* (●P.13-4) is set to *Manual retrieval*, S! Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to 930SC as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.

1. **Tap Messaging → *Received msg.***

2. **Select a folder → Select a notification**

   ```
   ◄ Received message 001 ►
   From: Sato Takuya [taku
   ya@*****.jp]
   Subject: Tomorrow's sch
   edule
   Date: Dec. 15 15:30
       [Retrieve mail]
   Let's go to the zoo tom
   orrow.
   添付あり:画像
   ◄ ▲     Select    ▼ ►
   Reply Forward Copy  More
    ●     ●      ●     ●
   ```

3. ***Retrieve mail* → Select a complete message**

• **Message List Indicators**

Unread Message Notification
📩 : Priority high
✉ : Priority standard
📩 : Priority low

Read Message Notification
📩 : Priority high
✉ : Priority standard
📩 : Priority low

Replying to Received Messages

Reply to received messages.

1. Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*

2. Select a folder → Select a message to reply to

3. Tap Reply → *S! Mail*, *S! Mail (History)*, *SMS*, or *SMS (History)*
   • To remain the received message text, select *S! Mail (History)* or *SMS (History)*.

4. Create a message (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ⑤)

• *RE:* appears before Reply Subject automatically.
• To send all recipient set in the received message, tap Reply to all at Step 3.
• Alternatively, tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Tap Reply or Reply to all → 📩 or 📩 beside message to reply to.

Forwarding Received Messages

Forward received message to other recipients.

1. Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder

2. Select a message → Tap Forward

3. Create a message (P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ②)

• *Fw:* appears before forwarded S! Mail Subject automatically.
• To forward received SMS, select S! Mail or SMS.
• Alternatively, tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Tap Forward → 📩 beside message to forward.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.4-20
● Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail
● Making Call to Sender
● Deleting Mail Server Messages via Notification

🔧 **Settings**
● Change font size (☞P.13-2)
● Change scroll unit (☞P.13-2)
● Show or hide Navigation Bar (☞P.13-2)

- Set received message notice content or hide notice (☞P.13-3)
- Select secret folder message notice setting (☞P.13-3)
- Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting (☞P.13-3)
- Select 3D Pictogram color settings (☞P.13-3)
- Select 3D Pictogram display speed (☞P.13-3)
- Set S! Mail receiving options (☞P.13-4)
- Set S! Mail receiving options during roaming (☞P.13-4)
- Link External Light to incoming Feeling Mail (☞P.13-4)
- Link External Light color to incoming Feeling Mail (☞P.13-4)
- Link Vibration to incoming Feeling Mail (☞P.13-4)
- Set whether to sound 930SC when Feeling Mail arrives (☞P.13-4)
- Linking Ringtone to incoming Feeling Mail (☞P.13-4)
- Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration (☞P.13-4)
- Set attached image appearance (☞P.13-4)
- Set attached image auto playback (☞P.13-5)
- Set attached sound auto playback (☞P.13-5)

Managing & Using Messages

Organize messages by type in five default folders.

Folder	Message Type
Received msg.	Saved Received Mail
Drafts	Saved Incomplete Mail
Templates	Created Graphic Mail/SMS Templates
Sent msg.	Saved Sent Mail
Unsent	Failed/Cancelled/Outgoing Mail
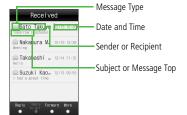
Viewing from Message List

From list of Received messages, Unsent messages, or Unsent, view the messages.

1. **Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent* → Select a folder as required**

2. **Select a message**

- Secret folders do not appear when *Secret mode* is set to *Hide.* To show secret folders, tap More → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select a folder.
- To scroll or highlight items such as phone numbers in a message, tap ◀/▲/▼/▶. Tap *Select* to select the highlighted item.
- In Message window, tap ◀/▶ or scroll right/left for next/previous message.

Message List

These indicators appear in message lists.

Message List Window (Received messages)

- Message Type
- Date and Time
- Sender or Recipient
- Subject or Message Top

● Received Message Indicators

Unread S! Mail
- : Priority high
- : Priority standard
- : Priority low
- : Media File Inserted

Read S! Mail
- : Priority high
- : Priority standard
- : Priority low
- : Media File Inserted

Unread Message Notification
- : Priority high
- : Priority standard
- : Priority low

Read Message Notification
- : Priority high
- : Priority standard
- : Priority low

Unread SMS
- : Saved to Phone
- : USIM Card SMS

Read SMS
- : Saved to Phone
- : USIM Card SMS

Receiving
- : S! Mail

● Draft Message Indicators

S! Mail
- : S! Mail
- : Media File Inserted

SMS
- : SMS

● Unsent Message Indicators

S! Mail
- : S! Mail
- : Media File Inserted
- : Resending

SMS
- : SMS
- : USIM Card SMS

● Sent Message Indicators

S! Mail
- : S! Mail
- : Media File Inserted

SMS
- : SMS
- : USIM Card SMS

Delivery Report
- : Unread S! Mail
- : Unread SMS

● If Secret mode is active, only number or address appears for messages to/from Secret entries.

Using Message Information

In a Message or Notification, highlight sender, recipient, phone number or mail address to save it to Phonebook, place a call, send mail, or open or bookmark a website.

Saving to Phonebook

1 **Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message → Select phone number, E-mail address, or URL → *Add to phonebook***

2 **Save a number to Phonebook**

■ **To save as a new entry**
New → (❍P.2-14 Creating New Entries ❷)

■ **To update existing entry**
Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (❍P.2-16) → Enter each item (❍P.2-14)

Saving as Bookmark

1 **Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message → Select URL → *Add to bookmark***

2 **Enter a title**

Using Page Links

Use sender's address, or a phone number, address, or URL embedded in message text.

1 **Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message**

2 **Use linked information**

■ **To make a Voice Call**
Select a phone number → *Voice call*

■ **To make a Video Call**
Select a phone number → *Video call*

■ **To edit a number before call**
Select a phone number → *Edit before call*

■ **To send a message**
Select a phone number or an E-mail address → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* (❍P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❺, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❺)

■ **To access the Internet**
Select URL → *Go to URL* → *Yes*

● To select a phone number and send a message, select S! Mail or SMS and create a message.

● Alternatively, tap directly some items such as phone numbers.

Deleting Messages or Templates

Deleting Messages

Delete specified messages or all messages in Mailbox.

1 Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent* → Select a folder as required

2 Tap Delete (in some windows, tap More → *Delete*) → Check message to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Deleting Templates

Delete specified templates or all saved templates.

1 Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates* or *Text templates*

2 Tap Delete → Check Graphic Mail template or text template → Tap Delete → *Yes*

● If message is protected or includes template, a confirmation appears. For templates, choose *Yes* to delete unprotected templates, choose *No* to delete all templates.

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.4-21

● Showing 3D Pictograms
● Adding Sender to Phonebook
● Viewing Sender and Recipient
● Copying Message Content
● Deleting Message
● Setting Character Code
● Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message
● Viewing Mail/Graphic Mail Template Details
● Sorting Messages
● Locking/Unlocking Message/Graphic Mail Template
● Changing Messages to Read/Unread
● Moving SMS Message to 930SC/USIM Card

● Sending Draft Message
● Editing & Sending Sent Messages
● Viewing Delivery Report
● Sending Unsent Messages after Editing
● Resending Unsent Messages
● Viewing Unsent Message Detail
● Sending Saved Graphic Mail Template via S! Mail
● Moving Graphic Mail template
● Copying Graphic Mail template
● Saving Graphic Mail as Template
● Sorting Graphic Mail Template
● Managing Graphic Mail Template
● Setting Secret to Graphic Mail Templates Folder
● Updating Mail List
● Forwarding Sever Mail
● Deleting Mail List Messages

🔧 Settings

● Set or cancel Auto Delete for received messages when Received memory is full (☞P.13-2)
● Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full (☞P.13-2)
● Change received message view (☞P.13-3)
● Change sent message view (☞P.13-3)

Managing Folders

Create folders in Received messages and Sent messages, and set a rule to each folder to automatically sort messages. Set Security to personal folders. *Received* and *Sent folder* cannot be deleted; the settings cannot be changed.

Creating Folders

1. **Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.***

2. **Tap Add new folder**

3. **Edit folder name**

Moving Messages

1. **Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select a folder as required**

2. **Tap More → *Move to folder* → Check message to move → Tap Move to folder**

3. **Select a destination folder**

● Received messages are saved to *Received* folder, and sent messages are saved to *Sent folder*. To move back to the original folder after moving messages to another folder, select *Received* or *Sent folder* in Step ③.

Sorting Messages

Sort and save the sent/received messages automatically by phone number, mail address, etc. to the specified folders. Sort messages by S! Mail subject or SMS text. Set up to 20 rules per folder.

1. **Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.***

2. **Tap Auto sort → Select a folder to move to**

3. **Set sorting rule**

■ **To select phone number/E-mail address from Phonebook**

Add rule → *Sender* or *Recipient* → *From phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select an entry (⊙P.2-16) → Select phone number or E-mail address

■ **To enter phone number/E-mail address directly**

Add rule → *Sender* or *Recipient* → *Enter number* or *Enter address* → Enter phone number or E-mail address

■ **To select phone number/E-mail address from Group in Phonebook**

Add rule → *Sender* or *Recipient* → *From group* → Select a group
- Groups saved on USIM Card cannot be set as a rule.

■ **To select phone number/E-mail address from History**

Add rule → *Sender* → *Recipient* → *From history* → From pulldown menu, select *Sent* or *Received* → Select a history

■ **To select a rule from text**

Add rule → *Subject* → Enter text to set as a rule

4 Tap OK

Advanced

🗝 Advanced Settings ☞P.4-25
- Changing Folder Name
- Setting Secret to Folder
- Deleting Folders
- Viewing Message or Folder Details
- Changing Sorting Rules
- Deleting Sorting Rules

🗝 Settings
- Change received message view (☞P.13-3)
- Change sent message view (☞P.13-3)

🗝 Advanced Settings

Sending S! Mail

Entering Address from Other Than Phonebook

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window

■ **To enter phone number directly**
Enter number → Enter phone number

■ **To enter E-mail address directly**
Enter address → Enter mail address

■ **To select phone number from Group in Phonebook**

From group → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select group
- If the number of items stored in a group exceeds 21, check recipients to send to and tap Add.
- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in an entry, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or a mail address.

■ **To enter address from Call Log records**
From history → From pulldown menu, *Sent* or *Received* → Select a record

---

Adding Address

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window with address already entered → *Add recipients*

■ **To select from Phonebook**
From phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (🔾P.2-16) → Select phone number or E-mail address

■ **To enter phone number directly**
Enter number → Enter phone number

■ **To enter mail address directly**
Enter address → Enter mail address

■ **To select phone number from Group in Phonebook**

From group → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select group
- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in an entry, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or a mail address.

■ **To enter address from Call Log records**
From history → From pulldown menu, *Sent* or *Received* → Select a record

- The number of addresses appears next to Recipient field 👤 in Create Message window.

Viewing History Details

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window → *From history* → From pulldown menu, *Sent* or *Received* → Tap View → Select a record to view

Deleting History

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window →
From history → From pulldown menu, *Sent* or
Received → Tap Delete

■ **To delete a record**
Tap 🗑 to delete → *Yes*

■ **To delete all records**
Tap Delete all → *Yes*

Changing Address Type to To, Cc, or Bcc

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window → Tap
an address type icon to change → Select an item

Deleting Address

Tap Recipient field in S! Mail creation window

■ **To delete an address**
Tap an address type icon to delete → *Remove*

■ **To delete all addresses**
Tap Remove all → *Yes*

Viewing Attached File

Tap Attach field in S! Mail creation window → Select a
file to view

Deleting Attached File

Tap Attach field in S! Mail creation window

■ **To delete a file**
Tap 🗑 to delete → *Yes*

■ **To delete all files**
Tap Remove all → *Yes*

Inserting Information into S! Mail

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Insert*

■ **To insert template**
Text templates → Select an item

■ **To insert bar code**
Scan → (♦P.9-8 Scanning Bar Code and QR
Code ❷)

■ **To insert Signature**
Signature

■ **To insert phone number from Phonebook**
Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select an
entry (♦P.2-16) → Select an item

■ **To insert Account details**
Account details → Select an item

■ **To insert a part of mail address**
Quick address list → Select an item

Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Cursor
position* → Select an item

Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Add to
dictionary* → (♦P.2-11 Saving to User's Dictionary
❷)

Setting Conversion

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Conversion*

■ **To activate/cancel Prediction**
Under *Prediction*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To activate/cancel Learning**
Under *Learning*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To reset User's dictionary**
Reset Learning → Enter phone password → Tap
OK → *Yes*

■ **To clear records of pictograms/symbols**
Clear history → *Yes*

Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts

In S! Mail creation window, tap Save → *Save to
Drafts*
• Only messages with recipient, subject, or text
entered, or file attached can be saved.

Sending Feeling Mail

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Feeling
settings* → Select a Feeling → Select pictogram

Resetting Feeling Setting

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Reset
feeling*

Setting Message Actions

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Action settings*

■ **To set whether to delete automatically after the other party reads the message**
Under *Set auto delete*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To set Reply request**
Under *Reply request*, *On*
●When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Reply Request* to edit a message.

■ **To restrict message forwarding**
Under *Forward NG*, *On*
●When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Forward NG* to edit a message.

■ **To restrict message deletion**
Under *Delete NG*, *On*
●When *On* is set, select *Edit message* from *Delete NG* to edit a message.

■ **To restrict message access with a question**
Quiz → *Open question* → *Edit question* → Tap Question field → Enter question → Tap Answer field → Enter answer → Tap Message (Correct) field → Enter message when answer is correct → Tap Message (Incorrect) field → Enter message when answer is incorrect → Tap OK
●To edit question, tap *Edit question*.

■ **To restrict message access with a multiple choice question**
Quiz → *Multiple choice question* → *Edit question* → Tap Question field → Enter question → *Answer* → Select correct number → Select Example1 to 4 field to enter choices → Tap Message (Correct) field → Enter message when answer is correct → Tap Message (Incorrect) field → Enter message when answer is incorrect → Tap OK
●To edit question, tap *Edit question*.
●When *Action settings* are set, the recipient's action can be set.

Requesting S! Mail Delivery Report

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Sending options* → Under *Delivery report*, *On* or *Off*
●Select *On* to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.

Setting Reply Settings

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Sending options* → Under *Reply settings*, *On* or *Off*
●Set the address "Reply to" address (⊘P.13-4).

Setting Message Priority

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Sending options* → *Priority* → Select an item

Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Sending options* → *Expiry time* → Select an item

Setting Delivery Time

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Sending options* → *Delivery time* → Select an item

Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding

In S! Mail creation window, tap Settings → *Sending options* → *Remote Fwd action* → Select an item
●This function is available only when forwarding Server Mail message (⊘P.4-24).

Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *3D Pictogram*

Deleting All Text

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Remove text* → *Yes*

Changing Text Color

In Graphic Mail creation window, *Color* → Select a color → Enter text

Blinking Text

In Graphic Mail creation window, *Effect* → *Blink* → *On* → Enter text
●To enter normal text subsequently, *Effect* → *Blink* → *Off* → Enter text.

Aligning Text

In Graphic Mail creation window, *Effect* → *Align* → Select an item → Enter text

Using Graphic Mail Settings

In Graphic Mail creation window, *Insert*

■ **To insert BGM from Data Folder**
BGM → *Ring songs•tones* or *Music* → Select a file

■ **To record BGM to insert**
BGM → *Record sound* → (●P.9-7 Recording Sound ❷)

■ **To insert Flash®**
Flash → Select a file

■ **To insert line**
Line

Canceling Inserted BGM

In Graphic Mail creation window with BGM, *Insert* → *BGM Cancel*

Changing Color, Size, and Effect of Entered Text

In Graphic Mail creation window with text entered, tap Select area → Tap start character to modify → Tap Start point → Tap end character to modify → Tap End point

■ **To change font color**
Color → Select a color

■ **To change font size**
Size → Select an item

■ **To change effect**
Effect → Select an effect → Select an item

■ **To cancel these modifications**
Undo

Viewing Graphic Mail

In Graphic Mail creation window with text, tap Preview

Saving Graphic Mail as Template

In S! Mail creation window, tap Save → *Save as Graphic Mail templates* → Enter file name
● Available only when text is decorated (●P.4-5).

Using Template to Create S! Mail

In S! Mail creation window, tap More → *Launch Graphic Mail template* → Select a template
● If you are already using template, you are prompted to discard the modification so far. Choose *Yes* to discard it and invoke a new template.

Using Template to Send S! Mail

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates* → Select a template → Tap Mail → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

Sending SMS

Specifying Recipient without Phonebook

In SMS creation window, tap Recipient field

■ **To directly enter recipient phone number**
Enter number→ Enter phone number

■ **To select recipient from phonebook group**
From group → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select a group
 ● Check the recipient first if the group holds more than 20 members → Tap Add.
 ● If two or more phone numbers are saved for one recipient, you may be prompted to select one of them.

■ **To enter from history**
From history → *Sent* or *Received* from pulldown menu → Select a log

Adding Recipient

Tap Recipient field in SMS creation window with address already entered → *Add recipients*

■ **To select from Phonebook**
From Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (🔾P.2-16) → Select phone number

■ **To enter phone number directly**
Enter Number → Enter phone number

■ **To select Phonebook Group number**
From group → *Phone* or *USIM* → Select a group
 ● If two or more phone numbers are saved for one recipient, you may be prompted to select one of them.

■ **To enter from history**
From history → *Sent* or *Received* from pulldown menu → Select a log

● The number of recipients appears next to Recipient field 👤 in SMS creation window.

Confirming History Details

Tap Recipient field in SMS creation window → *From history* → *Sent* or *Received* from pulldown menu → Tap View → Select a log to view

Deleting History Logs

Tap Recipient field in SMS creation window → *From history* → *Sent* or *Received* from pulldown menu → Tap Delete

■ **To delete a log**
Tap 🗑 for the file to be deleted → *Yes*

■ **To delete all history**
Tap Delete all → *Yes*

Deleting Recipient

In SMS creation window, tap Recipient field

■ **To delete a recipient**
Tap 🗑 for the recipient to be deleted

■ **To delete all recipient**
Tap Remove all → *Yes*

Inserting Information into SMS

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Insert*

■ **To insert Text templates**
Text templates → Select an item

■ **To insert barcode**
Scan → (🔾P.9-8 Scanning Bar Code and QR Code ❷)

■ **To insert signature**
Signature

■ **To insert phone number from Phonebook**
Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select an entry (🔾P.2-16) → Select an item

■ **To insert Account details**
Account details → Select an item

■ **To insert a part of address**
Quick address list → Select an item

Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Add to dictionary* → (☞P.2-11 Saving to User's Dictionary ❷)

Setting Conversion

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Conversion*

■ **To activate/cancel Prediction**
Under *Prediction*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To activate/cancel Learning**
Under *Learning*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To reset User's dictionary**
Reset Learning → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

■ **To clear records of pictograms/symbols**
Clear history → *Yes*

Saving SMS to Drafts

In SMS creation window, tap Save to Drafts
● Available only when either recipient or text is entered.

Converting SMS to S! Mail

In SMS creation window, tap To S! Mail

Requesting SMS Delivery Report

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Sending option* → Under *Delivery report*, *On* or *Off*
● Set *On* to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.

Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Sending option* → *Expiry time* → Select an item

Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In SMS creation window, tap More → *3D Pictogram*

Deleting All Text

In SMS creation window, tap More → *Remove text* → *Yes*

Using Template to Send SMS

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Text templates* → Tap Send → Select a template

Received Messages

Retrieving Messages Manually

Tap Messaging → *Retrieve new*

Setting Display Size of Attached Image

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → Select message → Tap More → *Settings* → *Picture appearance* → Select an item

Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → Select notification → Tap Forward → Select an item → (☞P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

Making Call to Sender

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → Tap More → *Call* → 🕿 beside message
● The sender should be logged as a phone number.

Deleting Mail Server Messages via Notification

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → Select notification → Tap More → *Delete* → Select an item

Using & Managing Messages

Viewing Attachment

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or
Unsent → Select a folder as required → Select
message → Select a file → *Open*

- To save a file to Data Folder before viewing, select a
file in Message window and select *Save*.
- To save attachment to vCard or vCalendar before
viewing, select a file in Message window and select
Register to Phonebook or *Register to Calendar*.
- To save vCard or vCalendar to Phonebook or
Calendar after viewing, tap Register.
- When a file requiring Content Key is attached, a
confirmation appears. To view the file, choose *Yes*
and purchase or acquire Content Key.
- When a file which allows play/view only once is
attached, a confirmation appears.

Saving Attached Files to Data Folder

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Select folder → Select message → Tap Save (for some
windows, tap More → *Save*) → *Save items* → Check
files to save → Tap Save

- When a message to notify the same file name exists,
tap *OK* and edit file name.

Saving Received/Sent Graphic Mail as Template

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Select folder → Select message → Tap Save (in some
windows, tap More → *Save*) → *Save as Graphic
Mail Template* → Enter file name

- Available only when text is decorated (◉P.4-5).

Showing 3D Pictograms

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or
Unsent → Select a folder as required → Select
message → Tap More → *3D Pictogram*

Adding Sender to Phonebook

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Select folder → Select message → Tap More → *Add
to phonebook* → Select phone number or E-mail
address

- **To save as a new entry**
  New → (◉P.2-14 Creating New Entries ❷)
- **To update existing entry**
  Update → Search Phonebook and select entry
  (◉P.2-16) → Enter each item (◉P.2-14)
- Alternatively, tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or
Sent msg. → Select folder → Tap More → *Add to
phonebook* → 🔲 beside message → Select phone
number or E-mail address.

Viewing Sender and Recipient

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Select folder → Select message → Tap More → *View
mail address*

Copying Message Content

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Select folder → Select message → Tap Copy (in some
windows, tap More → *Copy*)

- **To copy sender or recipient address**
  Address → Select address to copy
- **To copy subject**
  Subject (◉P.2-30 Specifying Range to Copy/Cut)
- **To copy text**
  Message txt (◉P.2-30 Specifying Range to Copy/
  Cut)

Deleting Message

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or
Unsent → Select folder as required → Select message
→ Tap Delete (in some windows, tap More → *Delete*)
→ *Yes*

Setting Font Size

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or
Unsent → Select folder as required → Select message
→ Tap More → *Settings* → *Font size* → Select an
item

Changing Scroll Unit

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or
Unsent → Select folder as required → Select message
→ Tap More → *Settings* → *Scroll unit* → Select an
item

Showing/Hiding Navigation Bar

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → *Settings* → *Navigation bar* → Select an item

Setting Character Code

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select folder → Select message → Tap More → *Char-code* → Select an item

Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → Select message → Tap More → *Scroll jump* → Select an item

Viewing Mail/Graphic Mail Template Details

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Templates*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → Select message or Graphic Mail template → Tap Details (in some windows, tap More → *Details*)

- Alternatively, tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Templates*, *Sent msg.*, or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → Tap Details (in some windows, tap More → *Details*) → Select message or Templates

Sorting Messages

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → Tap Sort by (in some windows, tap More → *Sort by*) → Select an item

- Sort messages by following items.
  - By time (*Time* ↓ /*Time* ↑)
  - By sender (*Sender*)
  - By recipient (*Recipients*)
  - By read or unread messages (*Read or Unread*)
  - By subject (*Subject*)
  - By message size (*Size*)
  - By attachment (*Attach*)
  - By locked/unlocked message (*Lock*)
- When *Sender*, *Recipients* or *Subject* is selected, messages are sorted by the order of single-byte symbol, single-byte number, single-byte alphabet, single-byte Katakana, double-byte symbol, double-byte Hiragana, double-byte Katakana, Kanji, double-byte number, and double-byte alphabet. When *Subject* is selected, messages with *Untitled* appear first.

Locking/Unlocking Message/Graphic Mail Template

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Templates*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → Tap Lock/Unlock (in some windows, tap More → *Lock/Unlock*) → 🔓 to lock → Tap OK
- Tap 🔒 to unlock.

Changing Messages to Read/Unread

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Tap More → *Switch to read/unread* → 📩 to read/ 📨 to unread → Tap OK
- Setting toggles by each tap.

Moving SMS Message to 930SC/USIM Card

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent* → Select folder as required → Tap More → *Move to USIM/phone* → 📱 / 💾 to move
- Tap 💾 to move to USIM Card, tap 📱 to move to 930SC.
- Save up to 10 messages to USIM Card. The number of messages that can be saved varies by USIM Card.
- When moving received SMS messages in a personal folder to USIM Card, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to move to USIM Card.

Sending Draft Message

Tap Messaging → *Drafts* → Select message → Tap Send
- When recipient is not entered, Send is not available to tap.

Editing & Sending Sent Messages

Tap Messaging → *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Select message → Tap Edit → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ➋, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ➋)
- Alternatively, tap Messaging → *Sent msg.* → Select folder → Tap Edit → 📨 to send.

4

Messaging

4-22

Viewing Delivery Report

Tap Messaging → *Sent msg.* → Select folder →
Select a message with *Delivery report* setting → Tap
Report

• Use with SMS/S! Mail addressed to phone number.

Sending Unsent Messages after Editing

Tap Messaging → *Unsent* → Select message → Tap
Edit → (◐P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending
SMS Messages ❷)

• Alternatively, tap Messaging → *Unsent* → Tap Edit
→ Tap 📧 to send.

Resending Unsent Messages

Tap Messaging → *Unsent* → Tap Resend → Tap 📧
to resend

Viewing Unsent Message Detail

Tap Messaging → *Unsent* → Tap More → *Error
details* → Select a message to view

Viewing Saved Graphic Mail Templates

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail
templates* → Select Graphic Mail template

Editing Saved Graphic Mail Template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail
templates* → Select saved Graphic Mail template →
Tap Mail → Tap Enter Text field → Enter text → Tap
OK → Tap Save → *Save as Graphic Mail Template*
→ Enter file name

Sending Saved Graphic Mail Template via S! Mail

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail
templates* → Select Graphic Mail template → Tap
Send via message → (◐P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

Moving Graphic Mail template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail
templates* → Tap Move → *Folders* or *Files* →
Check folder or Graphic Mail template to move → Tap
Move → Select a destination

• To create a new folder to move the item into the
folder, tap Create new folder → Enter folder name.

Copying Graphic Mail template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail
templates* → Tap Copy → *Folders* or *Files* →
Check folder or Graphic Mail template → Tap Copy →
Select a location to copy

Saving Graphic Mail as Template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail
templates* → Tap More → *Send*

■ **To send via Mail**
Via message → Select Graphic Mail template →
(◐P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → Check Graphic Mail template to
send → Tap Send → (◐P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via Infrared**
Via Infrared → Check Graphic Mail template to
send→ Tap Send → (◐P.12-3)

Sorting Graphic Mail Template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail
templates* → Tap More → *Sort by* → Select an item

Managing Graphic Mail Template

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail
templates* → Select folder as required → Tap More
→ *Manage*

■ **To change Folder or File Name**
Rename → Select folder or file → Enter name

■ **To create folder**
Create folder → Enter folder name

■ **To view Contents Key**
Download Content Key → Select Content Key

■ **To purchase or acquire Contents Key**
Download Content key →Select template

Setting Secret to Graphic Mail Templates Folder

Tap Messaging → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates* → Tap More → *Set secret* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Check folders to set secret → Tap OK

- Secret folders are hidden in *Secret mode*. To cancel Secret mode temporarily, tap More → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK.

Viewing Server Mail

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, *Yes*

Updating Mail List

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → Tap Update

Receiving Mail List Message

Tap Messaging → *Server mail*

■ **To receive a selected message**
Retrieve mail list → When a confirmation appears, *Yes* → Tap Get → Select message to receive

■ **To receive all mails**
Retrieve all mails
- Alternatively, *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, *Yes* → Tap Retrieve all

Forwarding Sever Mail

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, *Yes* → Tap More → *Remote forward* → 📧 to forward (◆P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

- *Fw:* appears before forwarded S! Mail Subject automatically.
- Set whether to delete message from Server after forwarding Server Mail message (◆P.4-17 Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding).

Deleting All Server Mail

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Delete all* → Select an item → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Deleting Mail List Messages

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, *Yes* → Tap More → *Delete* → Check message to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Viewing Server Mail Usage

Tap Messaging → *Server mail* → *Server mail memory*
- To update status, tap Update.

Viewing Memory Status

Tap Messaging → *Memory Status* → *Size (KB)* or *Count* from pulldown menu

- *Received msg.*, *Drafts, Sent msg. Unsent* and *SMS* memory appears.
- USIM Card SMS appears by *Count* only.
- To delete contents of current item, tap Delete (◆P.2-39 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Folder Management

Changing Folder Name

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Tap Rename → Select a folder → Enter name

Setting Secret to Folder

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Tap More → *Set/Unset secret* → Enter Phone
Password → Tap OK → Select a folder → Tap OK

● Secret folders are hidden in *Secret mode*. To cancel
Secret mode temporarily, tap More → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK.

Deleting Folders

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Tap More → *Delete* → Select a folder to delete →
Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Viewing Message or Folder Details

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Tap More → *Details* → Select a folder

Changing Sorting Rules

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Tap Auto sort → Select a folder to have rules to
change

■ **To change phone numbers or E-mail addresses to sort**
Tap Replace rule → Select Rule field → (❷P.4-14
Sorting Messages ❸)

■ **To change the text**
Select Text field → Edit Text → Tap OK

Deleting Sorting Rules

Tap Messaging → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →
Tap Auto sort → Select a folder to have rules to delete
→ Tap Delete

■ **To delete a rule**
Select rules to delete

■ **To delete all rules**
Tap Delete all → *Yes*

Internet Services

5

Internet Services

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo! Keitai or Internet sites via PC Site Browser. View page contents or download image/music files.

The Internet

Tap 📶 to access Yahoo! Keitai

Mobile Sites
Yahoo! Keitai
PC Sites

Use PC Site Browser to access to PC Sites

● In this guide, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal and service itself. "PC sites" are sites accessible via PC Site Browser. "Internet" refers to both Internet and Mobile Internet sites.

● A separate subscription is required for Internet services.

● Before using Internet, retrieve Network information.

Note

● **Internet connections incur Packet Communication fees.**

SSL & TLS

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication.
Confirm electronic certificates saved on 930SC (⊖P.5-14, 5-17).

Note

● **Using SSL/TLS**
When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open a page.
Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd. are not liable for the security of SSL/TLS. No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

Cache

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved in cache. Cache remains even after a session ends or handset is turned off. When full, oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones.
When a saved page is opened again, it may open from Cache. For the latest content, reload the page.

● When another USIM Card is inserted, Cache contents are automatically deleted.

● When a page with an expiry date is saved, page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

Yahoo! Keitai

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Access Mobile sites via Yahoo! Keitai main menu.

1 Tap ＹＺ
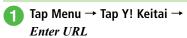
2 Select an item

- When accessing Mobile Internet for the first time, a screen for retrieving Network Information appears at Step **1**. After the retrieval, an information page appears.
- To open Yahoo! Keitai from PC Site Browser, tap More → *Switch to PC site browser* → *This page* or *Link* → *Yes* or *No*.

Note

- **When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, pages may not appear (⊙P.5-14).**

Entering URL

1 Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Enter URL*

- "http://" is set by default.

2 Enter URL

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.5-13
- Showing or Hiding Keypad on Pages
- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page
- Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page
- Searching Text
- Moving to Top/Bottom of Page
- Sending URL
- Deleting Access History
- Sending Access History
- Viewing Access History Details
- Zooming Page in/out
- Viewing Flash®
- Viewing Only Selected Frame
- Viewing Page Details
- Moving to Main Menu
- Exiting Browser

🔧 **Settings**
- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (☞P.13-6)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (☞P.13-6)
- Send or hide Referer (☞P.13-6)

- Select Cookie setting (☞P.13-6)
- Select Script setting (☞P.13-6)
- Confirm Root Certificate (☞P.13-6)
- Set Certificate retention period (☞P.13-6)
- Initialize Browser (☞P.13-6)
- Reset settings (☞P.13-6)
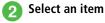
PC Site Browser

PC Site Browser Main Menu

Access PC sites via PC Site Browser main menu.

1. **Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai →**
   PC site browser → Homepage
   - If a warning appears, choose *Yes* or *No*.

2. **Select an item**

- Activate PC Site Browser, 🖥 appears.
- In PC Site Browser, download document files or stream media files.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.
- To open Yahoo! Keitai from PC Site Browser, tap More → *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai* → If a warning appears, choose *Yes* or *No*.

Note

- **When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, page may not open (⊙P.5-16).**
- **Viewing content rich sites may incur high Packet Communication charges.**

Entering URL

1. **Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai →**
   PC site browser → Enter URL
   - "http://" is set in URL field by default.

2. **Enter URL**
   - If a warning appears, choose *Yes* or *No*.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.5-15
- Zooming Page in/out
- Copying Text
- Searching Text
- Sending URL
- Moving to Top/Bottom of Page
- Deleting Access History
- Sending Access History
- Viewing Access History Details
- Viewing Flash®
- Viewing Only Selected Frame
- Viewing Page Details
- Opening Main Menu
- Changing Page Layout
- Exiting Browser

🔧 **Settings**
- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (☞P.13-7)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (☞P.13-7)
- Send or hide Referer (☞P.13-7)
- Select Cookie setting (☞P.13-7)

- Select Script setting (☞P.13-7)
- Confirm Root Certificate (☞P.13-7)
- Set Certificate retention period (☞P.13-7)
- Show or hide warning (☞P.13-7)
- Initialize Browser (☞P.13-7)
- Reset settings (☞P.13-7)

Page Operations

Yahoo! Keitai

Yahoo! Keitai Screen

❶ Tab navigation and page title
　 : Add a new tab
　Page title field: Tap a tab to display it
　 : Close the selected tab

❷ Navigation
　 / / / : Scroll to up/down/left/right, or move the cursor
　Select: Select a highlighted link or an image enclosed in a frame of dotted lines

Select

Back/ CLEAR

❸ Page navigation
　Tap Back or press CLEAR : Return to previous page
　Tap Next or Highlight link and tap *Select*: Move to next page
　● Next can be selected after you move to a next page and then back to the previous page.

● Alternatively, tap an item directly to select the link.
● Alternatively, touch the screen directly to scroll.
● Press CLEAR with no previous page, you are prompted to close Internet connection. Choose *Yes* to close it.

PC Site Browser

PC Site Browser Screen

❶ Page navigation
　 / CLEAR : Return to previous page
　 /Tap link: Move to next page
　 : Refresh pages to the current information
　URL field: Display the URL
　● Tap URL field to enter a URL.

❷ Tab navigation and page title
　 : Add a new tab
　Page title field: Tap a tab to display it
　 : Close the selected tab

5

Internet Services

5-5

- Rotate handset and Display image view rotates horizontally automatically to landscape view. Operations are the same as portrait view.
- Press 📺 to change to Full screen view. Press it again to return to the previous view.
- Touch the screen directly to scroll.
- Tap an item directly to select the link.
- Touching and holding an item will open it in a new tab (not available in Full screen view).

Tab Navigations

Use tabs at top of window to open up to three pages.

- Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites cannot be open simultaneously.
- Some pages may open in a new tab automatically.
- When multiple tabs are open, some pages may be partially obscured. Close unnecessary tabs.

Text Entry & Item Selection

Pages may contain fields and items shown below.

1 Text entry field
Enter data, certification passwords, etc. Select Text entry field, and enter text.

2 Radio button
Select an item only. Select an item with ⭕ to select it (Appearing as ⦿).

3 Menu field
Open a menu and select item. Select an item to open it. Select an item. If multiple items are selectable, press `CLEAR` to cancel all.

4 Check box
Select multiple items. Select an item with ☐ to select it (Appearing as ✔). To deselect an item, select ✔.

5 Command button
Perform operations assigned to a button such as *Send* or *Reset*. Select a command button to execute the operation.

Note

- **Text entry and item selection varies by page.**

Advanced

🔧 **Settings**

Bookmarks

Save page URLs as Bookmarks.

Saving as Bookmark

Save up to 50 Bookmarks each of Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser.

1 **Open a page**

2 **Tap Bookmark → *Save***

3 **Enter title**

Accessing from Bookmark

1 **Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* as required → *Bookmarks***

2 **Select a bookmark**

Note
● Packet Communication fees apply for Internet connection.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.5-18
● Opening Bookmarked Site
● Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry
● Editing Bookmark Title or URL
● Deleting Bookmarks
● Creating Folders in Bookmark List
● Sending Bookmark URL
● Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®
● Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared
● Moving Bookmark to Folders
● Changing Bookmark Order
● Saving Bookmark to Data Folder
● Viewing Bookmark Details

Saved Pages

Save page contents to view without connections.

Saving Page

Save up to 30 pages each of Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser.

1 **Open a page**

2 **Tap Menu (in some windows, tap More → *Saved pages*) → *Save***

3 **Enter title**

Opening Saved Page

1 Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* as required → *Saved pages*

2 Select a page

Note

- If replacing USIM Card inserted when pages are saved with another one, Saved pages cannot be displayed.

Advanced

● Opening Saved Page in a Page
● Renaming Saved Page
● Deleting Saved Pages
● Changing Order of Saved Pages

Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it is downloaded.
Access compatible files via page links, etc.

Streaming from Page Link

1 Open a page containing a page link

2 Select a link

Entering URL Directly

1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Enter URL*

- "rtsp://" is set in URL field by default.

2 Enter URL

08-12-15_15-30_002.3gp

0:00:40   0:01:01

◀ 7   ⏮   ⏸   ⏭

Stop   Add   View   View
     bookmark bookmark history

Streaming

- Operation while streaming is the same as that of Media Player (☞P.8-4, P.8-5).

Note

- Even if streaming is paused, Internet connection remains active, incurring Packet Communication fees.

Accessing from Bookmark

Save up to 20 links in Streaming Bookmark.

1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Bookmark*

2 Select a bookmark

Accessing from History

Holds up to 20 previously accessed links.

1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *History*

2 Select history

Advanced

✎ Advanced Settings ☞P.5-22

● Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming
● Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark
● Accessing Previously Accessed Streaming
● Editing Streaming Bookmark URL
● Saving Streaming Bookmark by Direct Entry
● Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL
● Editing History of Streaming
● Deleting History of Streaming

S! Quick News (Japanese)

View Yahoo! Keitai content updates for saved items.

● Select S! Quick News list or S! Loop list.
● Check for updates of items saved in S! Quick News or S! Loop list (☉P.1-22).
● S! Quick News requires a separate subscription.

Opening List

1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*

2 *S! Quick News List* or *S! Loop List*

S! Quick News List

```
S! Quick News List
📑 Register contents
📑 ニュース
☑ 930SC_TOPIC
```
```
Refresh    Details    Delete
  ●           ●          ●
```
S! Quick News List

📑 : Unread Newsflash
📑 : Unread general news
☑ : Read Newsflash
☑ : Read General news
📑 : Newsflash/general news auto update unavailable

S! Loop List

```
S! Loop List
📑 S! Loop
✍ Dの日記
✍ ワールドカ…(15)
✍ みさきのノ…
```
```
Refresh    Details    Delete
  ●           ●          ●
```
S! Loop List

✍ : Unread S! Loop
✍ : Read S! Loop
📑 : S! Loop auto update unavailable

Note

● **To use S! Quick News or S! Loop, Packet Communication fees apply.**

Viewing Update Information

S! Quick News List Update Information

1 **Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News***

2 ***S! Quick News List* → Select content**

3 **Select an entry**
 • Tap List/Index to return to S! Quick News list/ Contents list.
 • To connect to Internet and check for update, select an item and choose *Yes*.
 • To view information on the next page, tap Next to open the next page.
 • Tap Show keypad to display Keypad.

S! Loop List Update Information

1 **Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News***

2 ***S! Loop List***

3 **Select an item → Select an entry**
 • Tap List/Index to return to S! Loop list/ Contents list.
 • To connect to Internet and check for update, select an item and choose *Yes*.
 • To view information on the next page, tap Next to open the next page.
 • Tap Show keypad to open Keypad.

Registering S! Quick News List/ S! Loop List

Registering S! Quick News List

Register up to 1 newsflash and 4 general news items in S! Quick News list.

1 **Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News***

2 ***S! Quick News List***

3 ***Register contents* → *Yes***

4 **Select content → Follow onscreen instructions**

Registering S! Loop List

Register up to five entries in S! Loop list.

1 **Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News***

2 ***S! Loop List***

3 ***S! Loop* → *Yes***
 • For details on how to register S! Loop list, see the help menu in S! Loop.

Refreshing Entries Manually

1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*

2 *S! Quick News List* or *S! Loop List*

3 Tap Refresh → Select contents or S! Loop contents to refresh → Tap OK
- Tap Cancel to cancel refresh in process.

Deleting Entries

1 Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News*

2 *S! Quick News List* or *S! Loop List*

3 Tap Delete → Select contents or S! Loop contents to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Advanced

● Viewing Content Details
● Refreshing S! Quick News List
● Viewing S! Quick News from List
● Viewing S! Loop Content Details
● Refreshing S! Loop List
● Viewing S! Loop from List

S! Loop (Japanese)

S! Loop is a communication service.
- S! Loop requires a separate subscription.

Using S! Loop

1 Tap Menu → *Communication* → *S! Loop*
- Connect to Internet and open S! Loop top page.

- For details on how to use S! Loop, see the help menu in *S! Loop*.

Note
- **To use S! Loop, Packet Communication fees apply.**

Using S! Information Channel

S! Information Channel delivers subscribed content such as news overnight. Weather Indicator appears in Standby.

- This service is only available in Japan.
- S! Information Channel requires a separate subscription.

Subscribing to Service

1 **Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel/ Weather Indicator* → *Register/Cancel***

2 **Follow onscreen instruction**

Viewing Update Information

S! Information Channel content is received automatically; notification appears in Standby.

1 **Tap a notification**

2 **Follow onscreen instruction**
- Operations are same as Yahoo! Keitai.

Using Weather Indicator

Upon subscription to S! information channel, Weather indicator appears in Standby.
- ☼: Shine (daytime)
- ☽: Shine (nighttime)
- ☁: Cloudy
- ☔: Rain
- ☃: Snow
- ⚡: Thunderstorm
- ▷ : Then
- ∕ : Sometimes

Example: ☁ ∕ ☔ → Cloudy, sometimes rain

- In addition to the above, other information such as rainfall probability or seasonal information appears.

Note
- **When using S! Information Channel, Packet Communication fees apply.**

Advanced Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

Showing or Hiding Keypad on Pages

In a page, tap More → *Show keypad* or *Hide*

keypad

● In some pages, tap numbers on Keypad, ⬚*⬚, or
⬚#⬚ to select an item.

● With Keypad displayed, adjusting the displayed slider
to adjust the transparency of Keypad.

Copying Text

In a page, tap More → *Copy text*

■ **To copy selected text**
Tap the first character to copy → Tap Start point
→ Tap the last character to copy → Tap End point

■ **To copy all text in text entry window**
Tap All

Refreshing Page

In a page, tap More → *Refresh*

Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page

In a page, tap More → *Enter URL* → Enter URL

Entering URL from History

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**
Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Enter URL* → Tap
More → *Insert* → *EnterURL logs* → Select URL

■ **From a page**
In a page, tap More → *Enter URL* → Tap More
→ *Insert* → *EnterURL logs* → Select URL

● In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to
10 URL logs appear, newest first. When maximum is
reached, pages are automatically deleted oldest first.

Searching Text

In a page, tap More → *Search* → Enter text to search
● Words that match are highlighted. Tap Back or Next
to search for the previous or next match.

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, tap More → *Jump* → Select an item

Sending URL

In a page, tap More → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or
SMS → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending
SMS Messages ❷)

Opening Previously Viewed Page

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**
Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *History* → Select
URL

■ **From a page**
In a page, tap More → *History* → Select URL
● Up to 50 accessed URLs are saved.

Deleting Access History

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *History* → Tap Delete
→ Check history to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

● Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Tap
Delete → Check history to delete → Tap Delete →
Yes.

Sending Access History

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *History* → *Send URL*
→ *S! Mail* or *SMS* → Select history to send → *Yes*
→ (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending SMS
Messages ❷)

● Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Tap
Send URL → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → Select history to
send → *Yes*.

Viewing Access History Details

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *History* → Tap Details
→ Select history

● Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Tap
Details → Select history.

Zooming Page in/out

In a page, tap More → *Zoom in/out* → Adjust size

Viewing Flash®

In a page, open Flash® file, and tap More → *Flash®*

menu

■ **To pause/play**
Pause or *Play*

■ **To play from beginning**
Play from start

Viewing Only Selected Frame

In a page, tap More → *Frame in*

- Some pages may be divided into multiple sections. Such a section is referred to as a "Frame".
- To return to the normal display, tap More → *Frame out*.

Viewing Page Details

In a page, tap More → *Details*

- **To view page information**
  Page information
- **To view Server certificate**
  Server certification

Moving to Main Menu

In a page, tap More → *Yahoo! Keitai*

Changing Font Size

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Font size* → Select an item

Changing Scroll Unit

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Scroll unit* → Select an item

Changing Character Code

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Encoding* → Select an item

- If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Downloads*

- **To set image**
  Under *Display image*, *On* or *Off*
- **To set sound**
  Under *Play sounds*, *On* or *Off*

Clearing Cache

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Clear cache* → *Yes*

Deleting Cookies

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete cookies* → *Yes*

Deleting Certificates

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete certificates* → *Yes*

Setting Manufacture Number Notification

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → Under *Manufacture number*, *On* or *Off*

Sending/Not Sending Referer Information

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Send referer* → Select an item

- Referer is a link source URL information to be sent to Web server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Cookies* → Select an item

- Select *Confirm* for acceptance confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved.
- Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors in 930SC. Cookies contain user information allowing sites to recognize users and track preferences.

Enabling Script

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Script* → Select an item

Checking Root Certificates

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Root certificates* → Select a certificate

- View electronic certificate preinstalled on 930SC.

Certificate Retention

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Certificate retention* → Select an item

Initializing Saved Information

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Initialized browser* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved Pages.

Resetting Yahoo! Keitai Settings

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Exiting Browser

In a page, tap More → *Exit*

PC Site Browser

Zooming Page in/out

In a page, tap Zoom in/out → Adjust size

Copying Text

In a page, tap More → *Copy text*

■ **To copy selected text**
Tap the first character to copy → Tap Start point
→ Tap the last character to copy → Tap End point

■ **To copy all text in text entry window**
Tap All

Entering URL from History

■ **From PC Site Browser**
Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser*
→ *Enter URL* → Tap More → *Insert* →
EnterURL logs → Select URL

■ **From a page**
In a page, tap URL field → Tap More → *Insert* →
EnterURL logs → Select URL

● In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to
10 URL logs appear, newest first. When limit is
reached, pages are automatically deleted oldest first.

Searching Text

In a page, tap More → *Search* → Enter text to search

● Words that match are highlighted. Tap Back or Next
to search for the previous or next match.

Sending URL

In a page, tap More → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or
SMS → (⊃P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending
SMS Messages ❷)

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, tap More → *Jump* → Drag a frame to an
area to view → Tap Select

Opening Previously Viewed Page

■ **From PC Site Browser**
Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser*
→ *History* → Select URL

■ **From a page**
In a page, tap More → *History* → Select URL

● Up to 50 accessed page URLs are saved.

Deleting Access History

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* →
History → Tap Delete → Check history to delete →
Tap Delete → *Yes*

● Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Tap
Delete → Check history to delete → Tap Delete →
Yes.

Sending Access History

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* →
History → Tap Send URL → *S! Mail* or *SMS* →
Select history to send → *Yes* → (●P.4-3 Sending S!
Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❷)

● Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Tap
Send URL → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → Select history to
send → *Yes*.

Viewing Access History Details

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* →
History → Tap Details → Select history

● Alternatively, in a page, tap More → *History* → Tap
Details → Select history.

Viewing Flash®

In a page, open Flash® file, and tap More → *Flash®*
menu

■ **To pause/play**
Pause or *Play*

■ **To play from beginning**
Play from start

Viewing Only Selected Frame

In a page, tap More → *Frame in*

● Some pages may be divided into multiple sections.
Such a section is referred to as a "Frame".

● To return to the normal display, tap More → *Frame*
out.

Viewing Page Details

In a page, tap More → *Details*

■ **To view page information**
Page information

■ **To view Server certificate**
Server certification

Opening Main Menu

In a page, tap More → *Yahoo! Keitai*

Changing Font Size

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Font size* →
Select an item

Setting the Guide Show or Hide When Zoom

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → Under *Page*
navigation, *On* or *Off*

Changing Character Code

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Encoding* →
Select an item

● If page text appears garbled, changing character
encoding may solve the problem.

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Downloads*

■ **To set image**
Under *Display image*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To set sound**
Under *Play sounds*, *On* or *Off*

Clearing Cache

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory*
manager → *Clear cache* → *Yes*

Deleting Cookies

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory*
manager → *Delete cookies* → *Yes*

Deleting Certificates

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Memory*
manager → *Delete certificates* → *Yes*

Setting Manufacture Number Notification

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* →
Under *Manufacture number*, *On* or *Off*

Sending/Not Sending Referer Information

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Send*
referer → Select an item

● Referer is a link source URL information to be sent to
Web server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* →
Cookies → Select an item

● Select *Confirm* for acceptance confirmation every
time before a Cookie is saved.

● Cookie automatically saves identification information
of visitors in 930SC. Cookies contain user
information allowing sites to recognize users and
track preferences.

Enabling Script

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Script* → Select an item

Checking Root Certificates

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Root certificates* → Select a certificate
● View electronic certificate preinstalled on 930SC.

Certificate Retention

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Security* → *Certificate retention* → Select an item

Setting to Show Warning Messages

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Warning messages* → Under *Activate PC site browser* or *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai*, *On* or *Off*
● Always show or hide warning when activating PC Site Browser, or switching between Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser or vice versa.

Initializing Saved Information

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Initialized browser* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*
● Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved Pages.

Resetting PC Site Browser

In a page, tap More → *Settings* → *Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Changing Page Layout

In a page, tap More → *Small screen* or *PC screen*

Exiting Browser

In a page, tap More → *Exit*

Page Operations

Saving Phone Number/E-mail Address

In a page containing phone number/E-mail address, select phone number or E-mail address → *Save Number* → *Phone* or *USIM*

■ **To save as a new entry**
  New → (●P.2-14 Creating New Entries ❷)
■ **To update entry**
  Update → Search Phonebook and select entry
  (●P.2-16) → Enter each item (●P.2-14)
● Available phone numbers, Mail addresses appear underlined.

Sending Mail to Number/Mail Address

In a page containing phone number/E-mail address, select phone number or E-mail address → *Create Message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❺, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❺)
● Available phone numbers, Mail addresses appear underlined.

Calling Phone Number

In a page containing phone number, select phone number → *Voice Call* or *Video Call*
● Available phone numbers appear underlined.

Using URL to Open Another Page

Select URL in a page
● Available URLs appear underlined.

Saving Images or Other Files from Pages

■ **To save images displayed on a page**
In a page, tap More → *Save files* → *Save items*
→ Select image to save → Tap Save
●For Yahoo! Keitai, only when multiple images are there, select an image to save.

■ **To save background images**
In a page, tap More → *Save files* → *Save BG image* → Tap Save

■ **To save background sound**
In a page, tap More → *Save files* → *Save items*
→ Tap Save
●They cannot be saved with PC Site Browser.

■ **To save files linked to an anchor**
In a page, select a link for files to save → Tap Save
●For automatic save-type files, select the link.

●In a page where the detailed file information is provided, you have the following options (operations vary depending on the file).
Display: Display items such as images
Play: Play files
Save to pictogram: Save as pictogram
Back to browser: Return to the page
Set as: Set saved file as Wallpaper, etc. or ringtone

●If a message saying that the file name is already used appears, choose *Yes* to save it with a different name. Choose *No* to edit the file name

Bookmarks

Opening Bookmarked Site

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Select a bookmark

●Tap 🔡 or 🗐 in Bookmark list to toggle between List view and Thumbnail view.

Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**
Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap Add → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

■ **From PC Site Browser**
Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap Add → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

■ **From a page**
In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap Add → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

Editing Bookmark Title or URL

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**
Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap Edit → Select bookmark to edit → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

■ **From PC Site Browser**
Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap Edit → Select bookmark to edit → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

■ **From a page**
In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap Edit → Select bookmark to edit → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Title field → Enter title → Tap Save

Deleting Bookmarks

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

● In Thumbnail view, select a bookmark to delete → *Yes*.

Creating Folders in Bookmark List

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Create Folder* → Enter folder name

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Create Folder* → Enter folder name

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Create Folder* → Enter folder name

Sending Bookmark URL

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → Select bookmark to send → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❷)

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → Select bookmark to send → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❷)

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → Select bookmark to send → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❷)

Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send → (●P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send → (●P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send → (●P.12-6 Sending ❷)

● In Thumbnail view, select a bookmark to send → *Yes*.

Sending Bookmark URL via Infrared

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via infrared* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send (⊘P.12-3)

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via infrared* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send (⊘P.12-3)

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Send* → *Via infrared* → Check bookmarks to send → Tap Send (⊘P.12-3)

● In Thumbnail view, select a bookmark to send → *Yes*.

Moving Bookmark to Folders

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Move* → Check bookmarks to move → Tap Move → Select a destination folder

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Move* → Check bookmarks to move → Tap Move → Select a destination folder

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Move* → Check bookmarks to move → Tap Move → Select a destination folder

● To create a new folder to which you move an item, tap Create Folder → Enter a new folder name.

● In Thumbnail view, select a bookmark to move → Select a destination folder.

Changing Bookmark Order

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Change order* → Drag bookmark to desired location → Tap Done

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Change order* → Drag bookmark to desired location → Tap Done

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Change order* → Drag bookmark to desired location → Tap Done

Saving Bookmark to Data Folder

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Save to Data Folder* → *Phone* → Select bookmark to save → *Yes*

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Save to Data Folder* → *Phone* → Select bookmark to save → *Yes*

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Save to Data Folder* → *Phone* → Select bookmark to save → *Yes*

● The save location can be set to *Memory card* if inserted.

Viewing Bookmark Details

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Details* → Select bookmark

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Bookmarks* → Tap More → *Details* → Select bookmark

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Bookmark → *Open list* → Tap More → *Details* → Select bookmark

Saved Pages

Opening Saved Page in a Page

In a page, tap Saved pages (in some windows, tap More → *Saved pages*) → *Open list* → Select saved page

● Tap ▦ or ▤ in the list in Saved pages to toggle List view and Thumbnail view.

Renaming Saved Page

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Saved pages* → Tap Rename → Select saved page to edit → Enter name

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Saved pages* → Tap Rename → Select saved page to edit → Enter name

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Saved pages (in some windows, tap More → *Saved pages*) → *Open list* → Tap Rename → Select saved page to edit → Enter name

Deleting Saved Pages

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Saved pages* → Tap Delete → Select saved page to delete → *Yes*

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *Saved pages* → Tap Delete → Select saved page to delete → *Yes*

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Saved pages (in some windows, tap More → *Saved pages*) → *Open list* → Tap Delete → Select saved page to delete → *Yes*

● In the list, check a saved page to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Changing Order of Saved Pages

■ **From Yahoo! Keitai**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Saved pages* →
Tap Change order → Drag saved page to desired
location → Tap Done

■ **From PC Site Browser**

Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser*
→ *Saved pages* → Tap Change order → Drag
saved page to desired location → Tap Done

■ **From a page**

In a page, tap Saved pages (in some windows, tap
More → *Saved pages*) → *Open list* → Tap
Change order → Drag saved page to desired
location → Tap Done

Streaming

Playing the Last Played Streaming

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *Last
played*

Saving File to Bookmark while Streaming

While streaming, tap Add bookmark → Tap Title field
→ Enter title → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap
Save

Accessing Streaming Saved as Bookmark

While streaming, tap View bookmark → Select
bookmark

Accessing Previously Accessed Streaming

While streaming, tap View history → Select history

Editing Streaming Bookmark URL

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* →
Bookmark → Tap Edit bookmark → Select bookmark
to edit → Tap Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field
→ Edit URL → Tap Save

● Alternatively, while streaming, tap View bookmark
→ Edit bookmark → Select bookmark to edit → Tap
Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL
→ Tap Save.

Saving Streaming Bookmark by Direct Entry

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* →
Bookmark → Tap Add bookmark → Tap Title field →
Enter title → Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Save

● Alternatively, while streaming, tap View bookmark
→ Tap Add bookmark → Tap Title field → Enter title
→ Tap URL field → Enter URL → Tap Save

Deleting Streaming Bookmark URL

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* →
Bookmark → Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to
delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

● Alternatively, while streaming, tap View bookmark
→ Tap Delete → Check bookmarks to delete → Tap
Delete → *Yes*.

Editing History of Streaming

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* →
History → Tap Edit history → Select history to edit →
Tap Title field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL
→ Tap Save

● Alternatively, while streaming, tap View history →
Tap Edit history → Select history to edit → Tap Title
field → Edit title → Tap URL field → Edit URL →
Tap Save.

Deleting History of Streaming

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Streaming* → *History* → Tap Delete → Check URL to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

● Alternatively, while streaming, tap View history → Tap Delete → Check URL to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*.

S! Quick News (Japanese)

Viewing Content Details

In S! Quick News list, tap Details → Select content

Refreshing S! Quick News List

In S! Quick News list, select content → Tap Refresh
● Tap Cancel to cancel refresh.

Viewing S! Quick News from List

In S! Quick News list, select content → Tap Access website → *Yes*
● Tap Cancel to cancel.

Viewing S! Loop Content Details

In S! Loop list, tap Details → Select content

Refreshing S! Loop List

In S! Loop list, select content → Tap Refresh
● Tap Cancel to cancel refresh in process.

Viewing S! Loop from List

In S! Loop list, select content → Tap Access website → *Yes*
● Tap Cancel to cancel.

Refreshing S! Quick News List Automatically

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News* → *Settings* → *Auto refresh* → *S! Quick News*

■ **To refresh Newsflash automatically**
 Flash news → Select an item
■ **To refresh general news automatically**
 General → *On* or *Off*

● Auto refresh is executed based on the set time. To confirm next time for refresh, tap Details in S! Quick News list, and select content
● Set *General* to *On* to refresh automatically once a day.
● *Flash news* auto refresh is not executed between midnight and early AM. If *General* is set, news is refreshed automatically during that period.
● Auto refresh is not performed during roaming. Instead, you can refresh manually (●P.5-11).
● Auto refresh may fail outside service area or where signal conditions are poor.
● If auto refresh fails, update news manually (●P.5-11).
● Removing/replacing USIM Card cancels auto refresh.

Refreshing S! Loop List Automatically

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News* → *Settings* → *Auto refresh* → *S! Loop* → *On* or *Off*

- Auto refresh is executed every 4 hours. S! Loop list auto refresh is not executed between midnight and early AM.
- Auto refresh is executed based on the set time. To confirm next time for refresh, tap Details in S! Quick News list, and select content.
- Auto refresh is not performed during roaming. Instead, you can refresh manually (⊙P.5-11).
- Auto refresh may fail outside service area or where signal conditions are poor.
- If auto refresh has failed, update news manually (⊙P.5-11).
- Removing/replacing USIM Card cancels auto refresh.

Deleting S! Quick News List Automatically

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Quick News* → *Settings* → *Delete S! Quick News list* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

S! Information Channel

Viewing after Indicator Disappears

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel/Weather Indicator* → *What's New*

Viewing Information Previously Received

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel/Weather Indicator* → *History* → Select an item

Receiving Information You Failed to Receive

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel/Weather Indicator* → *Get Latest Contents* → *Yes*

Displaying Weather Indicator

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel/Weather Indicator* → *Weather Indicator* → *Weather*

Updating Weather Icon Manually

Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel/Weather Indicator* → *Weather Indicator* → *Manual update* → *Yes* → Follow onscreen instruction

Digital TV

6

About Digital TV

930SC supports One Seg terrestrial digital broadcasts. One Seg is referred to as "Digital TV" in this manual.

• Set up a channel list for the current service area or access programs via Program Guide.
• Use Data Broadcasts to get program-related information or to join the program through interactive services.

• **Watching Digital TV**
In Standby, press ⬛ for 1+ seconds to activate TV. Set up a channel list for your service area to watch available TV programs (⊗P.6-5).

• **Accessing Program Guide**
Download an electronic program guide (⊗P.6-6).

• **Watching Data Broadcasts**
In addition to audio and visuals, watch Data Broadcasts to get program-related information (⊗P.6-6).

• Operational instructions in this section are described with 930SC Display in Portrait.

Getting Started

Precautions

• 930SC supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast service available only in Japan.
• Do not use TV while driving a vehicle or riding a bicycle. (Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law since November 1 2004.) For TV use while walking, road safety precautions should always apply.
• Incoming transmissions may affect audio/visual signal. Use of another handset near 930SC may also affect TV.
• Use Stereo Earphone Microphone where viewing Digital TV with Speaker is inappropriate.

Reception

Digital TV may not be viewable in the following places:
• Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
• In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
• Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
• Near high-voltage lines, neon lights, or wireless base stations
• Near railroad tracks or highways
• In underground shopping malls or tunnels

• Anywhere jamming signal is broadcast or reception is blocked

Battery

When battery level is ▇, Digital TV is not available.

• If battery runs out while watching, TV automatically ends.

Charging

Charge battery while viewing Digital TV.
• Use the SoftBank approved AC Charger.
• Keep AC Charger cord away from Antenna; may cause interference.
• Charging takes longer when TV is active.

One Seg

One Seg is a terrestrial digital broadcast service supporting mobile television and data broadcasts in Japan. The 6 MHz band assigned to each digital channel is divided into 13 segments: 12 dedicated to HDTV broadcasting and the remaining "One Seg" to mobile devices.
One Seg service began on April 1 2006, in the three largest urban areas and 13 prefectures in Japan. For details, access the Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

- The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:
  http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/ (PC)
  http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/ (Mobile) Japanese
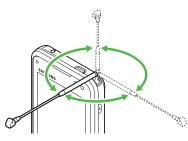
Antenna

- 930SC features a whip antenna that divides into two segments. Fully extend Antenna until fixed.

- After use, hold base of Antenna to retract it; pressing down on it with force may cause damage. Retract it and replace top bead into 930SC.
- Extend Antenna when viewing Digital TV, unless a broadcasting station is close. In this case, retract Antenna for better reception.

- For best reception, fold and rotate 360°.

Incoming Transmissions

Incoming Calls

Voice call

>>> 📱 <<<

Incomming call
Sato Takuya
090********

Hold answer Forward Record Reject

Incoming call window appears. Press 🔲 to answer a call.
The other party's phone number appears. End the call to return to Digital TV.

Incoming Messages

New message From [Sato Takuya]

ワンセグ
緊急アンケート
国語
明日の天気／警報・注意報／地震速報／台風
／大気汚／お野菜等／防犯情報
●防災情報
神奈川県
横浜／湘南幸々／三浦
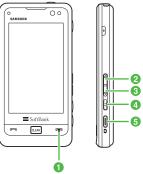
Sender's address, etc. appears at top of Display. Tap the ticker to view messages. Press 🔲 to return to TV window.

- When returning to Standby leaving messages unread, total number of new and unread messages is shown on Received Messages screen.
- Voice Calls or incoming messages may affect the quality of TV audio or visual reception. Handset use near 930SC while TV is active, may affect audio or visual reception quality.

Key Assignment

No.	Function
❶	Exit TV
❷❸	Adjust Volume
❷❸ (1+ seconds)*	Mute
❹ (1+ seconds)	Activate TV
❺ (1+ seconds)	Record/End recording

* Use Volume down button to mute.

6

Digital TV

6-4

TV Window

Portrait/Show ❸ to ❼ (With Subtitle)

Portrait/Show Data Broadcast

Landscape/Show ❸ to ❼

Landscape/Hide ❸ to ❼

❶ TV Image

❷ Subtitle

❸ Station Name/Program Name

❹ Channel
 ● When no channel is set, 📺 appears.

❺ Guidance

❻ Signal Strength

❼ Volume

❽ Data Broadcast

- To change to the Portrait view or the Landscape view, hold 930SC vertically or horizontally.
- Tap the TV screen or press any buttons other than `CLEAR` or `📞`, then ❸ to ❼ appear for a few seconds.
- Data Broadcast is only available in the Portrait view.

Area Setup

930SC contains local channel information. Before using TV for the first time, specify your area to set up channels.

1. **📺 (1+ seconds)**

2. **Confirmation appears, choose *Yes***

3. **Select a region**

4. **Select a province**

5. **Select a local area**
 ● Channel search starts.
 ● To cancel channel search, tap Cancel.

6. **Tap Next → Enter name → Select an area**

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.6-11
● Rejecting a call while watching TV

Watching TV

1 ⚆ **(1+ seconds)**

2 **Tap Channel field → Select a channel**
- To change a channel one by one, tap ◀/▶.

3 **To exit TV, 🔲 → *Yes***

- To adjust volume while watching TV, press 🔼/🔽.

G-Guide Mobile (Japanese)

"Ｇガイドモバイル" (G-GUIDE Mobile) is a convenient application that combines program guides for the terrestrial analog and digital broadcasting. Search TV programs by genre or keyword and retrieve them anytime and anywhere.
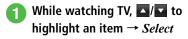
1 ⚆ → *Program guide*
- Alternatively, in TV window, tap EPG to show Program Guide.
- When Program Guide is activated for the first time, initial setting window for "Ｇガイドモバイル" (G-GUIDE Mobile) appears. Perform initial settings to access Program Guide.

- To highlight an item in EPG, tap ◁/△/▽/▷. Then, tap *Select* to select the highlighted item.
- Highlight a program to watch, tap ＴＶ起動 to show TV window. Also, tapping *Select* displays the detailed information of the highlighted program.

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In addition to audio/visuals, Data broadcast is available. Follow onscreen instructions to get program-related information or enjoy interactive TV services.

Basic Operations

1 **While watching TV, ▲/▼ to highlight an item → *Select***

- Internet connection confirmation may appear for Data Broadcast/transmissions from broadcaster. Information is free, however, accessing links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
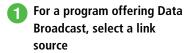
Note

- **No Communication fees apply for receiving Data Broadcast. However, Communication fees apply for using interactive services provided by Data Broadcast or services based on the Internet.**

6

Digital TV

6-6
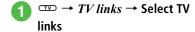
TV Links

Procedures to save links vary by program. Check information in Data Broadcasts.

Saving TV Links

1 **For a program offering Data Broadcast, select a link source**

Opening TV Links

1 ☒ → *TV links* → **Select TV links**

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.6-11

● Viewing Program Information
● Updating Channels in the Area
● Renaming Areas
● Deleting Areas
● Resetting All Channels
● Viewing Area Details
● Moving Channels
● Deleting Channels
● Viewing Channel Details
● Setting Subtitle Display
● Changing to Full Screen View
● Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page
● Viewing TV links
● Switching to Bluetooth®-Compatible Headset
● Starting Recording
● Ending TV application
● Deleting TV Links
● Viewing TV Link Details

🔧 Settings

● Select connection notification type (☞P.13-11)
● Show or hide Manufacture Number (☞P.13-11)
● Delete station data (☞P.13-11)
● Set whether to show indicator icons at the top of the screen in the Landscape view (☞P.13-11)
● Set whether to display 4:3 videos in the Landscape view (☞P.13-11)
● Set whether to display 4:3 videos in the Portrait view (☞P.13-11)

● Adjust display brightness (☞P.13-12)
● Adjust sound quality (☞P.13-12)
● Select language (☞P.13-12)
● Select output device (☞P.13-12)
● Handle Incoming Calls & Alarms (☞P.13-12)
● End TV after set duration (☞P.13-12)

Record/Playback Programs

Precautions

- Format and insert Memory Card before recording (●P.2-28).
- Never remove Memory Card while recording. Damage or accidental data loss may result.
- Recording is only available with sufficient remaining memory.
- Recording stops when battery runs low; charge battery while recording.
- Recorded programs cannot be copied/forwarded or attached to S! Mail.
- 930SC allows up to 12 hours recording per one program. Note that 12 hours recording requires about 2GB of memory.
- 930SC allows up to 48 hours recording for normal recordings and timer recordings altogether in the handset.
- Recording time is approximate 90 minutes with full 256 MB Memory Card.

Copyrights

930SC encryption technology prevents unauthorized use through data encryption and authentication.

Use only ISDB-T Mobile Video Profile (SD-Video standard) compatible device to playback recorded data.

930SC divides recorded files based on this standard.

Note

- **Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized use.**
- **Recorded content may be lost or damaged by accident or malfunction. SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration.**
- **Recorded data cannot be copied to another recordable media, such as other Memory Cards, etc.**

Recording Programs

Record current programs on Memory Card. Recorded files are saved to SD_VIDEO folder.

1. **In TV window, ⬜ (1+ seconds)**
   - Recording starts.

2. **Tap Save or ⬜ (1+ seconds) to end recording**

- Both TV image and Data Broadcast information (if any) are recorded. Recording without text is also available (●P.13-11).
- Changing volume, window size, or sound settings does not affect recordings.
- Recorded videos are stored in SD_VIDEO folder if they are saved in Memory Card.

Note

- **If Memory/Battery runs low, recording stops (recorded clip is saved).**
- **When Voice Call request is accepted, recording continues. Confirmation appears for incoming TV Call.**
- **With movie set for ringtone, TV recording takes priority over the movie ringtone (default ringtone may sound).**

Playing Recorded Programs

1 ⬚TV → *TV player*
- Alternatively, in TV window, tap TV player to show TV player.

2 **Select a file**
- Tap 🔲 to play a file stored in Memory Card.
- Playing video is resumed from the point you previously stopped it.
- Tap ⏸ to pause, ▶ to play.
- Tap ⏪/⏩ to fast forward/rewind. Tap once for *x2*, twice for *x10*.
- Tap ▶ to stop fast forward/rewind.
- Tap Stop to stop a playing.

- To view the detailed information on the recorded program, perform Step **1**, then tap Details and select a file.
- To change the file name, perform Step **1**, then tap Rename → Select a file to change → Enter a new file name.
- To delete the recorded file, perform Step **1**, then tap Delete → Check a file to delete → Tap Delete.

Advanced

⚒ Settings
- Set recording type (☞P.13-11)
- Select save location (☞P.13-11)

TV Timer/TV Timer Recording

Save up to five reservations per week. Set each reservation for up to four hours (dependent on Memory Card capacity). Four hours of recording time requires approximately 680 MB.

Precautions for Timer Recording
- End the current operations.
- Make sure TV reception is good.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged (or record while charging).
- Check there is enough free space on Memory Card.

Saving location for recorded programs
- If the saving location for recording video is set to Memory Card but there is no Memory Card inserted, they will be saved in the 930SC handset.
- If there is not enough free space on the memory (phone or USIM) as video storage, recorded video is saved in the alternative memory (USIM or phone).

Start/End Time

Digital TV receives programs slightly after scheduled start time; recording may start before reserved program.
Recording ends a few seconds after Timer end time.

Precautions for Timer
- Confirm Key lock is canceled.
- Confirm *Auto lock* is set to *Off*.

Via EPG (⊘P.6-6)

Note
- **If Key Lock is activated, TV does not start even at the start time.**

Setting Timer via EPG

1 ⬚TV → *Reservation list*

2 **Tap New → *Via EPG* → Tap メニュー**
- Refer to EPG application's help menu for operational instructions.

Manual Timer Settings

1 ⬛ → *Reservation list*

2 Tap New → *Manual*

3 Under *Recording, On or Off*
- Select *On* to record, *Off* to watch.

4 *Save to* → *Phone* or *Memory card*

5 Select *Once* from Date pulldown list → Tap date field → Enter date

6 *Start time* → Enter Start time

7 *End time* → Enter End time

8 *Channel* → Select a channel
- Tap Manual to enter a channel number.

9 Tap Save

At Timer Time
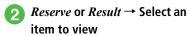
TV and Alarm activate at alarm notification time before reservation.
Exit all active functions; 930SC returns to Standby to enable Timer.

Viewing Reservation

1 ⬛ → *Reservation list*

2 *Reserve* or *Result* → Select an item to view
- Switch *Reserve* or *Result* tabs to view reservations before/after Start time.
- 🔲 (Repeat: 🔲) appears for timer recording, 🔲 (Repeat: 🔲) appears for timer watching. 🔔 appears when you set Alarm, 🔲 or 🔲 appears when failing to record or watch.

6

Digital TV

6-10

⚙ Advanced Settings

While Watching TV

Receiving a call

[☎]

•When the call ends, 930SC returns to TV window.

Rejecting a call while watching TV

Tap Reject

TV Window Operations

Viewing Program Information

In TV window, tap Info.

■ **To view Program Details**
Select a program

■ **To set timer recording**
Tap Record → Select a program → *Yes* or *No*
•If you select a program that is currently on air, the recording immediately starts.

■ **To set timer watching**
Tap Program → Select a Program → *Yes* or *No*

■ **To view Reservation List**
Tap Reserved List

■ **To view free memory space**
Tap Memory remain → *Phone* or *Memory card*

•To return to TV window, press [CLEAR].

Changing Reception Areas

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Change area* → Select an area

Setting Reception Areas

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Change area* → Select an available area → *Yes* → Select an area → Select a prefecture → Select a local area → Tap Next → Enter a name

•Up to 10 areas can be set.

Updating Channels in the Area

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Change area* → Tap Update

■ **To update all channels**
Update all → Select area → *Yes*
•Delete saved channel then update starts.

■ **To update further**
Update further → Select an area
•Add newly received channel; or overwrite saved channel with same No.

•Alternatively, tap More in TV window → *Set channels* → *Channel switch* → Tap Update → *Update all* or *Update further* → *Yes* as required

Renaming Areas

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Change area* → Tap Rename → Select an area → Enter name

Deleting Areas

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Change area* → Tap Delete → Select an area → *Yes*

Resetting All Channels

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Change area* → Tap More → *Reset* → *Yes*

Viewing Area Details

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Change area* → Tap More → *Details* → Select an area

Switching Channels

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* →
Channel switch → Select a channel

Moving Channels

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* →
Channel switch → Tap Move → Drag channel to
desired location → Tap OK

Deleting Channels

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* →
Channel switch → Tap Delete → Check channels to
delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Viewing Channel Details

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* →
Channel switch → Tap Details → Select a channel

Saving Channels

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Save
channel* → Select a channel → *Yes*

Setting Channel Selection

In TV window, tap More → *Set channels* → *Select
setting* → Select an item

Setting Subtitle Display

In TV window, tap More → *Show subtitle* or *Hide
subtitle*

• Show/Hide subtitle is TV program dependent feature.
• Sometimes subtitle area is indicated without subtitle.

Changing to Full Screen View

In TV window, tap More → *Data view*

• Tap TV for TV image.

Returning to Data Broadcast Top Page

In TV window, tap More → *Back to top*

Viewing TV links

In TV window, tap More → *TV links*

• To select the video image, tap TV.

Switching to Bluetooth®-Compatible Headset

In TV window, tap More → *Transfer to headset* →
Drag device to connect to *930SC* icon

• If *Transfer to headset* is set, volume adjustment on
930SC is unavailable. Adjust on headset.
• Only Bluetooth® stereo headphones compatible with
"SCMS-T", the copyright protection standard.
• Playback with monaural headset is unavailable.
• If no device is registered, search and register new
device.
• To set 930SC as sound output device while watching
TV, tap More → *Transfer to Phone*.

Setting TV Alarm

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *TV Alarm*

■ **To set Alert tone**
Alert tone → Select a save location → Select a
file

■ **To set Volume**
Adjust volume in Volume field

■ **To set Vibration**
Vibration → Select an item

■ **To set Light**
Under *Light*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To set Reminder time**
Reminder time → Select an item

■ **To set Duration**
Duration → Select an item

Selecting Data Broadcast Preference

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Set broadcast data*

■ **To set recording type**
Set recording → Select an item

■ **To select save location**
Image location → Select an item

■ **To select connection notification type**
Notify connection → Select an item

■ **To set manufacture No. notification**
Under *Manufacture number*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To delete station data**
Delete station data → Select a station as required → Tap Delete → Select 🗑 to delete → *Yes*
● To delete all stations, tap Delete all → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*.

Setting Screen

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Display*

■ **To set pictogram display**
Under *Display pict*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To set the Landscape view**
Landscape style → Select an item

■ **To set the Portrait view**
Portrait style → Select an item

■ **To adjust the screen brightness**
Adjust the screen brightness with the brightness control field
● This setting only appears when the backlight brightness is set to *Manual*.

Changing Sound Setting

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Sound*

■ **To adjust sound quality**
Sound mode → Select an item

■ **To select language**
Sound language → Select an item

■ **To select output device**
Sound output → Select an item

Setting the Saving Location for Recorded Files

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Recording* → *Save to* → Select an item

Handling Incoming Calls & Alarms

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Calls & Alarms* → Select an item → Select action

Setting Auto Power Off

In TV window, tap More → *Settings* → *Auto power off* → Select an item

Starting Recording

In TV window, tap More → *Start recording* → Tap Save
● Alternatively, while recording, tap More in TV window → *Stop recording* → *Yes* to end recording.

Ending TV application

In TV window, tap More → *End application*

Deleting TV Links

📺 → *TV links* → Tap Delete → Check TV link to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*
● Alternatively, while watching TV, tap More → *TV links* → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Viewing TV Link Details

📺 → *TV links* → Tap Details → Select a link to view
● Alternatively, while watching TV, tap More → *TV links* → Tap Details.

Timer/Timer Recording

Daily or Weekly Timer Recording

⬛ → *Reservation list* → Tap New → *Manual* →
From Date pulldown list, select *Everyday* or *Selected*
days

• If *Selected days* is selected, select a day to set.

Entering Program Name

⬛ → *Reservation list* → Tap New → *Manual* →
Program → Enter Program name

Setting Alarm Timer

⬛ → *Reservation list* → Tap New → *Manual* →
Under *Alarm*, *On*

Editing Reservations

⬛ → *Reservation list* → Tap Edit → Select a
reservation → (❷P.6-10 Manual Timer Settings ❸)

Deleting Reservations

⬛ → *Reservation list* → Tap Delete → Check
reservations to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Viewing Memory Remaining

⬛ → *Reservation list* → Tap Memory remain →
Phone or *Memory card*

Camera & Imaging

7

Mobile Camera

Capture pictures (still images) or record videos. Capture still images in JPEG, or videos in 3GP format.
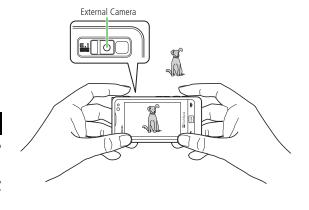
External Camera
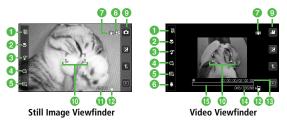
Mobile Camera Precautions

- Use a dry soft cloth to remove debris from camera lens.
- Avoid camera shake; hold 930SC steady or place it on a stable surface and use Self-timer to prevent objectionable image blur.
- Do not expose 930SC to devices with static electricity at use of camera.
- Mobile Camera employs high precision technology, however, some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.
- Leaving 930SC in a hot place for an extended period before image capture/save may affect image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may affect color filter.
- The quality of images captured in *Panorama shot* mode may be lower than those captured with other modes.
- When battery is low, camera may be unavailable.

Using Display as Viewfinder

When you hold 930SC sideways, Display changes to the Landscape view.
When you hold 930SC vertically, Display changes to the Portrait view.

- The view does not change between the Portrait and Landscape view during Multi-shot, Photo Combination, or video recording.
- This guide illustrates operational procedures for both still images and videos in the Landscape view.

Still Image Viewfinder

Video Viewfinder

➊ Shooting Size (the size varies on the view)

Still image

🔲 : 5M (2560×1920) *	🔲 : 3M (2048×1536) *
🔲 : 2M (1600×1200) *	🔲 : 1M (1280×960) *
🔲 : Standby (800×480)	🔲 : 0.3M (640×480)
🔲 : Wide S (400×240) *	🔲 : Mail (320×240) *

* Only when the shooting mode is set to *Normal* or *Scene*

Video

🔲 : VGA (640×480) *	🔲 : QVGA (320×240) *
🔲 : QCIF (176×144)	🔲 : SQCIF (128×96)
🔲 : S! Mail (176×144)	🔲 : S! Mail (128×96)

* Only for the Landscape view

➋ Macro

🌷 : On   None: Off

➌ Light

⚡ : Light On   None: Light Off

➍ Timer

None: Off   ⏱ : 3 seconds   ⏱ : 5 seconds   ⏱ : 10 seconds

➎ White balance

🔲 : Auto   🔲 : Daylight   🔲 : Incandescent   🔲 : Fluorescent
🔲 : Cloudy

➏ Record setting

🔲 : Sound On   🔲 : Sound Off

➐ Anti-Shake

🔲 : Anti-Shake On   None: Anti-Shake Off

➑ Face Focus

🔲 : Face Focus ON   None: Face Focus Off

➒ Shooting mode

🔲 : Still image/Normal	🔲 : Still image/Scene (Auto)
🔲 : Still image/Scene (Portrait)	
🔲 : Still image/Scene (Landscape)	
🔲 : Still image/Scene (Sports)	
🔲 : Still image/Scene (Night)	
🔲 : Still image/Scene (Indoor)	
🔲 : Still image/Scene (Beach/Snow)	
🔲 : Still image/Scene (Dawn)	
🔲 : Still image/Multi-shot (6 shots)	🔲 : Still image/Multi-shot (9 shots)
🔲 : Still image/Frame shot	🔲 : Still image/Photo Combination
🔲 : Still image/Panorama shot	🔲 : Video

➓ Focus frame

7

Camera & Imaging

7-3

⓫ Available remaining shooting number

⓬ Save to

   📱 : Phone or Ask each time

   📷 : Memory card or Digital camera

⓭ Elapsed recording time/Available recording time
- If Size is set to *S! Mail*, only the elapsed recording time appears.

⓮ Expected image size/Available memory at the time you started the shooting
- If Size is set to *S! Mail*, the shooting data size/ available shooting size appear.

⓯ Progress bar

- Tapping the icons (**❶** to **❻**) at the left side of Viewfinder opens a menu.
- Tapping an image on Viewfinder shows or hides icons or the current settings.

Camera Mode
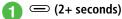
For taking still pictures, select the Shooting mode to suit your purpose.

Shooting Mode	Description
Normal	Capture single images, select size for purpose; attach images to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc.
Scene	Capture a still image that suits for taking a portrait (person) or scene.
Multi-shot	Press shutter once to capture six or nine sequential images.
Frame shot	Capture a still image with Frame.
Photo Combination	Capture sequential images manually. Select Frame to automatically combine images into a composite image.
Panorama shot	Ideal for landscape. Capture up to six images to automatically composite into a single panoramic image.

Captured images are saved to *Pictures*. Insert Memory Card to save images (*0.3M* images and larger) to *Digital camera*.

- When Memory Card is inserted and save location is set to *Digital camera*, *Mail* and *Wide S* images are automatically saved to *Pictures* folder.

Single Shot

1 ⬜ (2+ seconds)

- Alternatively, tap Menu → *Camera* → *Take photo*.
- Adjust settings before capturing as required.

2 Frame image in Viewfinder

- Press ⬇/⬆ to enlarge or reduce image.

3 ⬜

Prompt for Saving Still Image

- To redo, press CLEAR.

4 Tap Save

- **Using Auto Focus**

  When *Auto focus* is set to *On*, Auto Focus is available; automatically focusing a subject at the center of the frame.

  Half-press ⬜ to focus on. Then press ⬜ to take a picture.

  Frame turns green when image is in focus. Frame turns brown if image is not in focus.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞ P.7-13
- Adjusting Brightness
- Setting Shooting Size
- Setting Macro
- Setting Light
- Setting Timer
- Setting White Balance
- Setting Effect (Color Tone)
- Sending Captured Still Images
- Entering File Name of Captured Still Image
- Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.
- Exiting Quick Play
- Editing Still Image Opened via Quick Play
- Using Oekaki anime with Still Image Opened via Quick Play
- Setting Still Image Opened via Quick Play to Wallpaper etc
- Viewing Image Details via Quick Play
- Playing Quick Play Slide Show
- Sending Still Images Opened via Quick Play
- Deleting Images Opened via Quick Play

🔧 **Settings**
- Set Anti-Shake (☞ P.13-9)
- Activate or cancel Auto Focus (☞ P.13-9)
- Activate or cancel Auto Save (☞ P.13-9)
- Set Contrast (☞ P.13-9)
- Set Saturation (☞ P.13-9)
- Set Sharpness (☞ P.13-9)
- Select Quality (☞ P.13-9)
- Set ISO (☞ P.13-9)
- Set Exposure metering (☞ P.13-9)
- Set Wide Dynamic Range (☞ P.13-9)
- Set save location when Memory Card is inserted (☞ P.13-10)
- Show or hide Guideline (☞ P.13-10)
- Set Face link Display (☞ P.13-10)
- Set Shutter sound (☞ P.13-10)

Capturing Options

Selecting a Scene

1 ⊝ **(2+ seconds)**

2 📷 → *Scene*

3 **Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder →** *Scene* **→ Select a scene**

- Adjust settings before capturing as required.
- To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.

4 **Frame image in Viewfinder**

- Press ⬇/⬆ to enlarge or reduce image.

5 ⊝

- To redo, press `CLEAR`.

6 **Tap Save**

- Macro, Anti-Shake, and Wide Dynamic Range are not available for a scene shooting.

Multi Shot

1 ⊝ **(2+ seconds)**

2 📷 → *Multi shot*

3 **Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder →** *6/9 photos* **→ Select image count**

4 *Speed* **→** *Fast*, *Normal*, *Slow* **or** *Manual*

- Adjust settings before capturing as required.
- To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.

5 **Frame image in Viewfinder**

- Press ⬇/⬆ to enlarge or reduce image.

6 ⊝

- If *Speed* is set to *Manual*, repeat Step **6**. Tap ⬛ to stop shooting and save the images.
- To redo, tap ⮌ or press `CLEAR`.

7 **Check images to save → Tap Save**

- Face Focus, Anti-Shake, and Wide Dynamic Range are not available for Multi-shot.
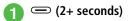
Capturing Still Images with Frame

1 ⊝ **(2+ seconds)**

2 📷 → *Frame shot*

3 **Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder →** *Frames* **→ Select a frame**

- Adjust settings before capturing as required.
- To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.

4 **Frame image in Viewfinder**

- Press ⬇/⬆ to enlarge or reduce image.

5 ⊝

- To redo, tap ⮌ or press `CLEAR`.

6 **Tap Save**

- Face Focus, Anti-Shake, and Wide Dynamic Range are not available for Frame shot.

Photo Combination

1 ⊜ (2+ seconds)

2 ⊡ → *Photo combi*

3 Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder → *Style* → Select a style
• Adjust settings before capturing as required.
• To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.

4 Frame image in Viewfinder → Apply selected frame and press ⊜
• Press ⍝/⍝ to enlarge or reduce image.

5 Repeat step **4** to capture images → ⊜
• To redo, tap ⊃ or press CLEAR.

6 Tap Save

• Face Focus, Anti-Shake, and Wide Dynamic Range are not available for Photo Combination.

Panorama Shot

1 ⊜ (2+ seconds)

2 ⊡ → *Panorama shot*
• Viewfinder appears in Landscape.
• Adjust settings before capturing as required.
• To close the menu, tap an area other than menu items.

3 Frame image in Viewfinder
• Press ⍝/⍝ to enlarge or reduce image.

4 ⊜
• To redo, tap ⊃ or press CLEAR.

5 Move 930SC to capture an image (vertically or horizontally) → Adjust small black border inside big border to automatically capture image

6 Repeat step **5** to capture range → ◻
• Capturing ends. Alternatively, capturing six images automatically ends capturing.
• To redo, tap ⊃ or press CLEAR.

7 Create panoramic image automatically → Tap Save
• Depending on the number of images to be captured, producing may take time.
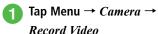
• Face Focus, Anti-Shake, and Wide Dynamic Range are not available for Panorama shot.
• Move 930SC slowly to capture panoramic image.
• Panorama is ideal for capturing landscapes. Stand at least ten meters from subject. If too close panoramic image creation may fail.
• Low light or high contrast may hinder panoramic image creation.

Video Mode

Capture clips easily. Files are saved in 3GP format to *Videos* folder in Data Folder. When recording a video to attach to or insert into an S! Mail, set Shooting size to *S! Mail* (☉P.7-14).

● Record up to 2 hours for 1 clip.
● Captured *VGA* and *QVGA* clips appear in landscape view.

Recording Video

1 **Tap Menu → *Camera* → *Record Video***

● Adjust settings before capturing as required.

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder**

● Press ⬆/⬇ to enlarge or reduce image.

3 ⬚

● To pause while recording, tap ⏸. To resume the recording, tap ⏺.
● While recording, press ⬆/⬇ to enlarge or reduce image.

4 ⬚ **or** ⬛

Prompt for Saving Video

● Capturing ends. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.

5 **Tap Save**

● **Using Auto Focus**
  When *Auto focus* is set to *On*, Auto Focus is available; automatically focusing a subject at the center of the frame (the focus is locked while recording a video).
  Press ⬚ halfway to focus on. Then press ⬚ all the way to start recording.
  Frame turns green when image is in focus. Frame turns brown if image is not in focus.
● Face Focus and Wide Dynamic Range are not available for recording video.

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.7-14

● Setting Shooting Size
● Setting Macro
● Setting Light
● Setting Timer
● Setting White Balance
● Setting Effect (Color Tone)
● Setting Sound Recording
● Viewing Recorded Video before Saving
● Sending Recorded Video
● Entering File Name of Recorded Video
● Setting Recorded Video to Ringtone
● Setting Video Displayed by Quick Play to Ringtone
● Viewing Video Details Displayed by Quick Play
● Sending Video Displayed by Quick Play
● Deleting Video Displayed by Quick Play

● Exiting Quick Play

Settings
● Set Anti-Shake (☞P.13-9)
● Activate or cancel Auto Focus (☞P.13-9)
● Activate or cancel Auto Save (☞P.13-9)
● Set Contrast (☞P.13-9)
● Set Saturation (☞P.13-9)
● Set Sharpness (☞P.13-9)
● Select Quality (☞P.13-10)
● Set save location (☞P.13-10)
● Show or hide Guideline (☞P.13-10)

Editing Images

Editing Still Images

Edit still images saved in Data Folder.

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → **Select a folder**

2 Select a file

3 Tap Edit → *Image editor*

4 Edit image

■ **To set Effects on image**
Tap Effect → *Filter, Style,* or *Warp* → Select an effect → Tap Done
●For some effects, adjust the effect level.

■ **To adjust an image automatically**
Tap Adjust → *Auto level*

■ **To adjust an image**
Tap Adjust → *Brightness, Contrast,* or *Color* → Adjust image → Tap Done

■ **To resize an image**
Tap Transform → *Resize* → Select a size
●After selecting *Customize*, enter *Width* and *Height*, and tap Done.

■ **To rotate an image**
Tap Transform → *Rotate* → ☐ or ☐ → Tap Done

■ **To flip an image**
Tap Transform → *Flip* → ☐ or ☐ → Tap Done
● To undo, tap ☐.

5 Tap Save → Enter file name

Camera & Imaging

7-9

Oekaki Anime

Draw lines or shapes on a still image or insert text on it. In addition, you can add motions to your drawings to create Flash® images.

1 Tap Menu → *Oekaki anime*

2 Tap Canvas → *Pictures* or *Digital camera* → Select a still image
· To select a file from *Digital camera* folder, insert Memory Card.

3 Select image size

■ **To set image to Wallpaper, etc.**
Normal
· Images are automatically resized to smaller than 800 x 480 pixels.
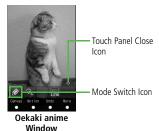
■ **To attach image to messages to send**
S! Mail
· Images are automatically resized to smaller than 400 x 240 pixels.

4 Draw

Touch Panel Close Icon

Mode Switch Icon

Oekaki anime Window

■ **To draw lines**
Tap Mode switch icon → *Pen* → 🖉 → Select a line type → ▪ → Select a line width → 🔲 → Select a line color → Draw lines

■ **To draw shapes**
Tap Mode switch icon → *Shape* → ☐ → Select a shape → ▪ → Select a line width → 🔲 → Select a Contour color → 🔲 → Select a color → Draw shapes
· Drag as if tracing a diagonal line.

■ **To insert text**
Tap Mode switch icon → *Text* → 🔳 → Enter text → 🔳 → Select a font size → 🔳 → Select a font → 🔳 → Select a font color → Drag text to desired place

■ **To insert stamps**
Tap Mode switch icon → *Stamp* → 🔳 → *Preset stamp* → 🔳 → Select a stamp → Tap an area to paste the stamp

■ **To add a motion to the pasted stamp**
Tap Motion → Tap a stamp to add a motion → Tap OK → *Preset* → Select a motion → Tap OK
· Each icon represents the current setting. When you change a setting, the corresponding icon also changes.

7

Camera & Imaging

7-10

5 Tap More → *Preview* → Confirm the image

Setting Redrawing speed

Preview

- Oekaki process playback allows you to perform the following operations:
  - ▐▐ / ▶ : Pause/Resume
  - ◀◀ : Play from the beginning

6 Tap Save → *Save as Flash®* or *Save as image* → *Phone* or *Memory card* → Enter file name

- To save a file to *Memory card*, insert Memory Card.

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.7-16

- Cropping and Editing Still Images
- Using Oekaki anime with Images Taken by Camera
- Using Oekaki anime with Colored Background
- Undoing Edit Operation of Oekaki anime
- Setting Created Image to Wallpaper
- Saving and Sending Created Image

Printing Still Images

Print still images saved on 930SC by connecting a printer via Bluetooth® or USB.
For more information about printer operations and paper setting, see printer User Manual.

Printing via Bluetooth®

- Print images with Bluetooth® printer.
- Pair Bluetooth® printer beforehand.

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location

2 Tap More → *Print*

3 *Via Bluetooth* → Check files to print → Tap Print

4 Drag device to connect to *930SC* icon

- If no device is registered, search and register new device.

5 Set items as required

■ **To set whether to print a frame or not**

Under *Frame*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To set print size**

Print size → Select a print size

■ **To set the number of copies**

Number of copies → Enter the number of copies (1 to 99)

■ **To set the number of pages to print per sheet**

Page format → Select an item
● When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages per sheet* and select a setting (1 to 16 up).

■ **To set whether to print the date or not**

Under *Print date*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To set print quality**

Print quality → Select an item

6 Tap Preview → Tap Print

Printing via USB

1 Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location

2 Tap More → *Print*

3 *Via USB* → Check files to print → Tap Print → *Yes*

4 Connect 930SC to a printer via USB

5 Set items as required

■ **To set whether to print a frame or not**

Under *Frame*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To set print size**

Print size → Select a print size

■ **To set the number of copies**

Number of copies → Enter the number of copies (1 to 99)

■ **To set the number of pages to print per sheet**

Page format → Select an item
● When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages per sheet* and select a setting (1 to 16 up)

■ **To set whether to print the date or not**

Under *Print date*, *On* or *Off*

■ **To set print quality**

Print quality → Select an item

6 Tap Preview → Tap Print

Capturing Still Images

Adjusting Brightness
On Still Image Viewfinder, 🔲 → Adjust brightness

Setting Shooting Size
Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Size* → Select an item

Setting Macro
Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Macro* → *On* or *Off*

Setting Light
Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Light* → *On* or *Off*

Setting Timer
Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Timer* → Select an item

Setting White Balance
Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *White balance* → Select an item

Setting Effect (Color Tone)
Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Effects* → Select an item

Sending Captured Still Images
In Still Image Saved Confirmation window, tap Send

■ **To send via message**
Via message → (⊙P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)
● If the captured image size exceeds 300 KB, a
window for resizing the image appears after
saving the image to Data Folder. Resize the
image before attaching it (⊙P.4-4 Attaching
Files).

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → (⊙P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
Via infrared (⊙P.12-3)

Entering File Name of Captured Still Image
In Still Image Saved Confirmation window, tap Rename
→ Enter file name

Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.
In Still Image Saved Confirmation window, tap Set as

■ **To set image to Wallpaper**
Wallpaper → Tap Rotate as required → 🔲 or
🔲 to toggle direction or tap Zoom → 🔍 or 🔍
to adjust zoom level → Tap Set

■ **To set image to Incoming image**
Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select an
entry (⊙P.2-16) → Tap Set

■ **To set image to Alternative picture**
Still image → Tap OK

Viewing Still Images by Quick Play
⟲ (2+ seconds) → 🔲 → Select an item → 🔘 /
🔘 to view Image
● With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* or
Digital camera is selectable.

Editing Still Image Opened via Quick Play
⟲ (2+ seconds) → 🔲 → Select an item → 🔘 /
🔘 to view Image → Tap Image editor → (⊙P.7-9
Editing Still Images ❹)
● With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* or
Digital camera is selectable.

Using Oekaki anime with Still Image Opened via Quick Play
⟲ (2+ seconds) → 🔲 → Select an item → 🔘 /
🔘 to view Image → Tap Oekaki anime → (⊙P.7-10
Oekaki Anime ❸)
● With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* or
Digital camera is selectable.

Setting Still Image Opened via Quick Play to Wallpaper etc

⬤ (2+ seconds) → 🔲 → Select an item → ◁ /
▷ to view Image → Tap Set as

■ **To set image to Wallpaper**
  Wallpaper → Tap Rotate as required → 🔁 or
  🔁 to toggle direction or tap Zoom → 🔍 or 🔍
  to adjust size → Tap Set

■ **To set image to Incoming image**
  Caller ID → Search and select a phonebook
  (⊙P.2-16) → Tap Set

■ **To set image to Alternative picture**
  Still image → Tap OK

●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* or
  Digital camera is selectable.

Viewing Image Details via Quick Play

⬤ (2+ seconds) → 🔲 → Select an item → ◁ /
▷ to view Image → Tap Details

●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* or
  Digital camera is selectable.

Playing Quick Play Slide Show

⬤ (2+ seconds) → 🔲 → Select an item → Tap
Slide show

●Press 〔CLEAR〕 during playback to cancel Slide Show.
●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* or
  Digital camera is selectable.

Sending Still Images Opened via Quick Play

⬤ (2+ seconds) → 🔲 → Select an item → ◁ /
▷ to view image → Tap Send

■ **To send via message**
  Via message → (⊙P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
  Via Bluetooth → (⊙P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
  Via infrared (⊙P.12-3)

●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* or
  Digital camera is selectable.

Deleting Images Opened via Quick Play

⬤ (2+ seconds) → 🔲 → Select an item → ◁ /
▷ to view image → Tap Delete → *Yes*

●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* or
  Digital camera is selectable.

Exiting Quick Play

Tap Back to Camera during Quick play

Recording Videos

Setting Shooting Size

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Size* → Select an item

Setting Macro

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Macro* → *On*/*Off*

Setting Light

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Light* → *On*/*Off*

Setting Timer

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Timer* → Select an item

Setting White Balance

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *White balance* → Select an item

Setting Effect (Color Tone)

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Effect* → Select an item

Setting Sound Recording

Tap the icon area located at the left side of Viewfinder
→ *Sound* → *On*/*Off*

Viewing Recorded Video before Saving

In Video Saved Confirmation window, ▶

Sending Recorded Video

In Still Image Saved Confirmation window, tap Send

■ **To send via message**
  Via message → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
  Via Bluetooth → (●P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
  Via infrared (●P.12-3)

Entering File Name of Recorded Video

In Still Image Saved Confirmation window, tap Rename
→ Enter file name

Setting Recorded Video to Ringtone

In Video Saved Confirmation window, tap Set as

■ **To set video to Voice ringtone**
  Voice ringtone

■ **To set video to Video ringtone**
  Video ringtone

■ **To set video to Phonebook**
  Caller ringtone → Select phonebook (●P.2-16)

Viewing Recorded Video by Quick Play

Tap Menu → *Camera* → *Record Video* → ▣ →
Select an item → ◁ / ▷ to view a video → ▶

●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* or
  Digital camera is selectable.

Setting Video Displayed by Quick Play to Ringtone

Tap Menu → *Camera* → *Record Video* → ▣ →
Select an item → ◁ / ▷ to view a video → Tap Set
as

■ **To set video to Voice ringtone**
  Voice ringtone

■ **To set video to Video ringtone**
  Video ringtone

■ **To set video to Phonebook**
  Caller ringtone → Search and select a
  phonebook (●P.2-16)

●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* is
  selectable.

Viewing Video Details Displayed by Quick Play

Tap Menu → *Camera* → *Record Video* → ▣ →
Select an item → ◁ / ▷ to view a video → Tap
Details

●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* is
  selectable.

Sending Video Displayed by Quick Play

Tap Menu → *Camera* → *Record Video* → ▣ →
Select an item → ◁ / ▷ to view a video → Tap
Send

■ **To send via message**
  Via message → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
  Via Bluetooth → (●P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
  Via infrared (●P.12-3)

●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* is
  selectable.

Deleting Video Displayed by Quick Play

Tap Menu → *Camera* → *Record Video* → ▣ →
Select an item → ◁ / ▷ to view a video → Tap
Delete → *Yes*

●With Memory Card is inserted, *Memory card* is
  selectable.

Exiting Quick Play

Tap Record video during play a video

Editing Still Images

Cropping and Editing Still Images

Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → Select a file location →
Select a file → Tap Edit → *Image editor* → Tap
Transform → *Crop*

■ **To adjust cropping area**
Touch and hold inside cropping frame and drag →
Tap Crop → Tap Save → Enter an image name

■ **To change cropping size or shape**
Stretch cropping frame → Tap Crop → Tap Save
→ Enter an image name

Using Oekaki anime with Images Taken by Camera

Tap Menu → *Oekaki anime* → Tap Canvas → *Take
photo* → Capture an image → Tap Save → Select a
size

Using Oekaki anime with Colored Background

Tap Menu → *Oekaki anime* → Tap Canvas → *Color
canvas* → Select a background color

Editing Entered Text

In Oekaki anime window, tap Mode switch icon →
Text → Tap text you already entered → 📧 → Edit
the text → Change the Font size, Font, Font color, or
the location of the text

Adding Emotion Clipart to Still Images

In Oekaki anime window, tap Mode switch icon →
Stamp → 🖼 → *Photo stamp* → 🖼 as required

■ **To select from saved still images**
Pictures or *Digital camera* → Select a still
image for a stamp → Tap area to paste it
● With Memory Card is inserted, *Digital camera*
is selectable.

■ **To capture an image by Camera**
Take photo → Take a still picture → Tap *Save* →
Tap an area to paste it as a stamp.

● Each icon represents the current setting. When you
change a setting, the corresponding icon also
changes.

Adding Motions to Lines or Shapes You Drew

In Oekaki anime window, tap Motion → Drag to
enclose a line or shape to add a motion → Tap OK →
Preset → Select a motion → Tap OK

● Drag as if tracing a diagonal line of the area to add
the motion.

Moving along with a Line

In Oekaki anime window, tap Motion

■ **For lines or shapes**
Drag to enclose the desired line or shape → Tap
OK → *Motion line* → Draw a motion line starting
from the selected line or shape → *Preview* → Tap
OK
● Drag as if tracing a diagonal line of the desired
area.

■ **For stamps**
Tap the desired stamp → Tap OK → *Motion line*
→ Draw a motion line starting from the selected
stamp → *Preview* → Tap OK

● To delete the motion line and draw again, tap *Undo*.

Deleting Motions

In Oekaki anime window, tap Motion → Tap a line,
shape, or stamp to remove the motion → Tap OK

■ **To delete Preset**
Preset → 🔁 → Tap OK

■ **To delete Motion line**
Motion line → *Off* → Tap OK

Undoing Edit Operation of Oekaki anime

In Oekaki anime window, tap Undo

● Undo the last operation performed in Oekaki anime
window such as drawing a line or selecting a setting
option.

7

Camera & Imaging

7-16

Deleting Lines, Shapes, Text, or Stamps

In Oekaki anime window, tap Mode switch icon →
Delete

■ **For lines or shapes without any motion**
Drag to enclose the line or shape to delete
●Drag as if tracing a diagonal line of the area to delete.

■ **For lines or shapes with motions**
Tap a line or shape to delete

■ **For text or stamps**
Tap text or stamp to delete

Setting Created Image to Wallpaper

In Preview window, tap Set as wallpaper → Select an
item → Enter file name

Saving and Sending Created Image

In Preview window, tap Send

■ **To send via Message**
Via message → Select an item → (🟢P.4-3
Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → Select an item → (🟢P.12-6
Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
Via infrared → Select an item → (🟢P.12-3)

Changing the Saving Location for Created Image

In Oekaki window, tap More → *Setting* → Under
Save to, *Phone*, *Memory card*, or *Ask each time*
●When no Memory Card is inserted, the saving
location is automatically set to *Phone*.

Setting Oekaki Process Playback Speed

In Oekaki anime window, tap Settings → Adjust
Oekaki process playback speed

Media Player & Games

8
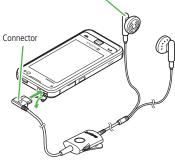
Media Player

Play sound/video files in Data Folder. Or download video content and play it in Streaming.

• Use Stereo Earphone Microphone with Media Player. Insert Connector as shown below. Remove Connector to use Speaker.

Stereo Earphone Microphone

Connector
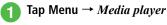
• Use Stereo Earphone Microphone to accept Voice Calls. When handset rings/vibrates, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer the call.
• From Music or Video menu, select *Download music* or *Download movies*, to download files via Yahoo! Keitai.

Music & Video

Downloading Music & Video

Access Yahoo! Keitai and download music or video.

1 Tap Menu → *Media player*

2 Download music or video

■ **To download music**

Music → *All music* → *Download music* or *Music search*
• Select *Music search* to access Music search and search by genre or artist name.

■ **To download video**

Movie → *All movies* → *Download movies*

Note

• **Downloading music or video may incur high Packet Communication charges since they have large data size.**

Saving WMA/WMV Media Files to Phone or Memory Card

Example: Using S! Music Connect

• To save to Memory Card, insert Memory Card beforehand, and follow steps below.
Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Set default memory* → *Memory card*

1 Connect 930SC to a PC via USB

2 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *USB mode* → *MTP synch mode* → *Yes*

3 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
• Copying operation from PC is enabled. For details, see S! Music Connect help.

4 While connecting, tap Exit

5 Remove USB cable

• Receiving calls or messages is not available in the MTP sync mode.

- S! Music Connect is available for download at Softbank Website (http://www.softbank.jp). For operating environment and other information, access Softbank Website.

Saving PC Media Files of Other Formats to Memory Card

You need software that converts music or video file formats.

- Softbank does not guarantee proper operation with any specific software.
- For software specifications or operations, please check for websites of software companies.

1 **Insert Memory Card into 930SC**
   - Tap Menu → *Data Folder* → 🔲 to confirm folders are created.

2 **Remove Memory Card from 930SC and insert into PC**

3 **Save PC Media Files to the specified Memory Card Folder**

- Save files to the following folders by type:
  Music file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music
                PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds
                & Ringtones
  Video file: PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Videos
- If you copy WMA/WMV music or video directly to Memory Card, you may not able to play them. Make sure to save them to Memory Card through the MTP synch mode (⊘P.8-2).
- After saving files, insert Memory Card into 930SC and load saved files to play the files.

Playable File Formats
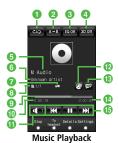
Player	File (Extension)
Music	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, aac, or 3gp (sound only)) SoftBank Music Contents (smc), Windows Media Audio(wma)
Video	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp), H.263, H.264, Windows Media Video (wmv)

- To play a music file in a format other than above, select it from *Ring songs・tones*. Even compatible files must be saved in *Ring songs・tones* to play.

Note

- **Video files exceeding 640 x 480 (mp4 or 3gp) or 320 x 240 (wmv) in resolution cannot be played.**

Media Player Music Window

❶ ❷ ❸ ❹

❺
❻   ⓬
❼   ⓭
❽
❾   ⓮
❿   ⓯
⓫

Music Playback

❶ Repeat mode

Tap this to toggle the settings.

➡ : Off

🔁 : One

🔀 : Shuffle (with repeat)

🔀 : Shuffle (without repeat)

🔁 : Repeat all

❷ Repeat section

First tap : Set the starting point

Second tap : Set the end point (and the repeat starts)

Third tap : Exit the repeat

❸ Sound effect

Tap this to toggle the settings.

● This is not available when using Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone.

❹ 3D sound settings

Tap this to toggle the settings.

● This is not available when using Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone.

❺ Title (File name when title is unknown)

❻ Artist's name

❼ Copyright protection

❽ File no./Total number of files

❾ Progress bar

Drag or tap to specify start point.

❿ Elapsed playing time

⓫ Volume level

Tap this to adjust the volume level.

⓬ Web link is provided

Tap this to connect the related website.

⓭ Lyrics available

Tap this to show the lyrics.

⓮ Total playing time

⓯ Operation keys

▶ : Play

⏸ : Pause

⏮ : Cue/Previous song

● Tapping this within 3 seconds after the playback starts takes you to the previous song, tapping this after 3 seconds brings you to the beginning of the current song.

Touch and hold ⏮ : Rewind

⏭ : Next song

Touch and hold ⏭ : Forwarding

● Rotate handset and Display image view rotates horizontally automatically to landscape view. Operations are the same as portrait view.

8

Media Player & Games

8-4

Media Player Video Window

Video Playback

❶ Repeat mode

Tap this to toggle the settings.

➡️ : Off

🔁 : One

🔀 : Shuffle (with repeat)

🔀 : Shuffle (without repeat)

🔁 : Repeat all

❷ Repeat section

First tap : Set the starting point

Second tap: Set the end point (and the repeat starts)

Third tap : Exit the repeat

❸ Playback speed

Tap this to change the setting.

❹ Display size

Tap this to change the setting.

❺ Save as still image

Tap this to save a still image.

● You cannot save copyright protected videos as a still image.

❻ Video title (or the file name if there is no title) and the author

❼ Copyright protection

❽ File no./Total number of files

❾ Progress bar

Drag or tap to specify start point.

❿ Elapsed playing time

⓫ Volume level

Tap this to adjust the volume level.

⓬ Web link is provided

Tap this to connect the related website.

⓭ Total playing time

⓮ Operation keys

▶ : Play

⏸ : Pause

⏮ : Cue/Previous song

● Tapping this within 3 seconds after the playback starts takes you to the previous song, tapping this after 3 seconds brings you to the beginning of the current song.

Touch and hold ⏮ : Rewind

⏭ : Next song

Touch and hold ⏭ : Forwarding

● Rotate handset and Display image view rotates horizontally automatically to landscape view. Operations are the same as portrait view.

● Tapping the video in the Portrait view displays ❶ to ❺ icons. Tapping the video in the Landscape view displays all items other than the video image itself such as the playback navigator or progress bar.

Advanced

🔧 Settings

● Activate MTP Sync Mode (☞P.13-25)

Playing Music

1 **Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music***

2 **Play a file**

■ **To play most recently played file**
Last played
● While playing, *Now Playing* appears and Music playback window is displayed.

■ **To select from all files**
All music → Select a file

■ **To select from playlist**
Playlist → Select a playlist → Select a file

■ **To select from list of Artists**
Artists → Select an Artist → Select a file

■ **To select from list of Albums**
Albums → Select an Album → Select a file

■ **To select from list of Genres**
Genres → Select a genre → Select a file

■ **To select from Folder List**
Folder → Select a folder → Select a file

■ **To select from list of recently played files**
Recent music → Select a file

■ **To select from list of often played files**
Most played music → Select a file

● Tapping ▶ next to *All music* or a playlist name plays all files in the list.
● When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in *All music* list and *Folder* with 🔲.
● While Player is active, press `CLEAR` repeatedly to hide player window. Also, press 🔲 to choose whether to exit Player or keep playing the music as BGM. In Standby, press 🔲 to end Player. End confirmation appears, choose *Yes*.
● When a list is displayed while playing music, tap 🎵 to return to Player window.
● If a call arrives while a file is playing on Player window, playback pauses and 930SC rings. After call ends, paused Player window returns. For BGM, playback resumes automatically after call ends.
● Alarm time arrives while a file is playing on Player window, playback pauses, Alarm sounds and indicator appears. Press any key to stop Alarm, then another key to clear the indicator. For BGM, playback resumes.

Music Folder

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played/ Now playing	Last played or currently played file
All music	Up to 9999 *Music* files
Playlists	View playable file on *Music* in created folders
Artists	All *Music* files by Artist
Albums	All *Music* files by Artist Album
Genres	All *Music* files by Artist Genre
Folder	All files in *Ring songs・Tones* and *Music* folders of Data Folder and Memory Card, as well as MYFOLDER in Memory Card
Recent music	100 recently played files (Most recent first)
Most played music	100 most frequently played files (Most frequent first)

● Memory Card files may take longer to load.

Note

● **Changing or deleting *All music* files affects files in *Ring songs・tones.* or *Music*.**

Advanced

⚙ Advanced Settings ☞P.8-9

● Searching File by Text
● Adding Files to Playlist
● Sending Files
● Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode
● Sorting Files
● Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key
● Renaming File
● Protecting File
● Deleting Files
● Viewing File Details
● Changing Order of Files in Playlist
● Renaming Playlist
● Deleting Playlist
● Stopping Playback
● Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback

⚙ Settings

● Set Repeat mode (☞P.13-8)
● Set Equalizer (☞P.13-8)
● Set 3D sound (☞P.13-8)

Playing Video

1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie*

2 Play a file

■ **To play most recently played file**
Last played

■ **To select from all files**
All movies → Select a file

■ **To select from playlist**
Playlist → Select a playlist → Select a file

■ **To select from folder list**
Folder → Select a folder

■ **To select from list of recently played files**
Recent movie → Select a file

■ **To select from list often played files**
Most played movie → Select a file

● Tapping ▶ next to *All movies* or a playlist name plays all files in the list.
● When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in *All movies* or *Folder* list with 🔳.

Movie Folder

Folder structure is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played	Play most recently played file
All movies	View all playable file on *Movie* up to 9999
Playlists	View playable file on *Movie* in created folders
Folder	View files on *Movie* folders of Data Folder and Memory Card, as well as MYFOLDER in Memory Card
Recent movie	View up to 100 recently played file (Most recently played file appears first)
Most played movie	View up to 100 frequently played file (Most frequently played file appears first)

Note

● If deleting or changing setting of files in *All movies* folder, files in *Movie* are also deleted or changed.

Using Playlist

Creating Playlist

Create up to 20 playlists, containing up to 100 files each.

1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* or *Movie* → *Playlists* → Tap Create

2 Enter playlist name

3 Select created playlist

4 Tap Add

5 Check files to save → Tap Add to playlist

Playing Playlist

1 Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* or *Movie* → *Playlists*

2 ▶ beside playlist

・Playlist cannot be played if included file has been deleted, or file is added from Memory Card and Memory Card is removed. Insert the Memory Card and load file to play.

Games

Two games are installed in 930SC.

Note

- **You can play these games by shaking 930SC. If you shake it too hard, the handset may hit a person or object, and result in damage or injury. Do not shake 930SC too much. Make sure to hold it securely in a safe place when you play these games.**

Dice

Shake 930SC to cast two dice in the window.

1. Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *Dice*

2. **Shake 930SC**

RandomBall

Use as Bingo Ball spinner, for example.
Set range of numbers and quantity of balls.

1. Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *RandomBall*

2. *Range* → Set *Min* and *Max* → *Balls* → **Enter quantity** → **Tap OK**

3. **Shake 930SC**

🔧 Advanced Settings

Music Playback

Searching File by Text

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap Search files → Check *Title* or *Artist* → Tap Search field → Enter title or artist name → Tap Search

Adding Files to Playlist

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap Add playlist → Check a file to add → Tap Add to playlist → Select a playlist

- To create a new playlist and add files to it, tap Create in the window to add files → Enter playlist name.

Sending Files

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap Send

- **To send via message**
  Via message → Select a file → (🔗P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

- **To send via Bluetooth®**
  Via Bluetooth → Check files → Tap Send (🔗P.12-6 Sending ❷)

- **To send via infrared**
  Via infrared → Check files → Tap Send (🔗P.12-3)

- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap More → *Set as* → Select a file → Select an item

- Alternatively, tap Set as in Music playback window.
- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to ringtone.
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Sorting Files

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap More → *Sort by* → Select an item
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap More → *Download Content key* → Select a file
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Renaming File

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap More → *Rename* → Select a file → Enter file name

Protecting File

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap More → *Lock/Unlock* → Tap a file to protect, then the icon is changed to 🔒 → Tap OK
- To release the protection, tap it again, then the icon is changed to 🔓.

Deleting Files

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap More → *Delete* → Check files to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Viewing File Details

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* → Tap More → *Details* → Select a file
- Alternatively, during playback, tap Details.
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *Playlists* → Select a playlist → Tap More → *Move track in playlist* → Drag file to desired location → Tap OK

Renaming Playlist

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *Playlists* → Tap Rename → Select a Play list → Enter playlist name

Deleting Playlist

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Music* → *Playlists* → Tap Delete → Check a playlist → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Stopping Playback

During playback, tap Stop

Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback

In Music playback window, tap To headset → Drag device to connect to *930SC* icon

- When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- If setting *Transfer to A/V headset*, volume adjustment on 930SC is unavailable. Adjust on the headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.
- To switch output to 930SC while playing music, tap To Phone.

Setting Repeat Mode

In Music playback window, tap Settings → *Repeat mode* → Select an item

Setting Equalizer

In Music playback window, tap Settings → *Equalizer* → Select an item
- This is not available when you use a Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone.

Setting Stereophonic Sound

In Music playback window, tap Settings → Under *3D sound*, *On* or *Off*
- This is not available when you use a Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone.

Movie Playback

Searching File by Text

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap Search files → Check *Title* or *Author* → Tap Search field → Enter title or author's name → Tap Search

Adding Files to Playlist

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap Add playlist → Check a file to add → Tap Add to playlist → Select a playlist

- To create a new playlist and add files to it, tap Create in the window to add files → Enter playlist name → Select playlist

Sending Files

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap Send

■ **To send via message**
Via message → Select a file → (❂P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → Check a file → Tap Send (❂P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
Via infrared → Check a file → Tap Send (❂P.12-3)

- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap More → *Set as* → Select a file → Select an item

- Alternatively, tap Settings as in Music playback window.
- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to ringtone.
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Sorting Files

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap More → *Sort by* → Select an item

- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap More → *Download Content key* → Select a file

- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Renaming File

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap More → *Rename* → Select a file → Enter file name

Protecting File to Restrict Editing File Name and Deleting File

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap More → *Lock/Unlock* → Tap a file to protect, then the icon is changed to 🔒 → Tap OK

- To release the protection, tap it again, then the icon is changed to 🔓.

Deleting Files

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap More → *Delete* → Check a file to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Viewing File Details

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *All movies* → Tap More → *Details* → Select a file

- Alternatively, during playback, tap Details.
- Perform the same operation in other folders.

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *Playlists* → Select a playlist → Tap More → *Move track in playlist* → Drag file to desired location → Tap OK

Renaming Playlist

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *Playlists* → Tap Rename → Select a playlist → Enter playlist name

Deleting Playlist

Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *Playlists*
→ Tap Delete → Check a playlist → Tap Delete →
Yes

Stopping Playback

During playback, tap Stop

Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback

In Music playback window, tap To headset → Drag
device to connect to *930SC* icon

- When no device is registered, search and register
  new device.
- If setting *Transfer to A/V headset*, volume
  adjustment on 930SC is unavailable. Adjust on the
  headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.
- To switch output to 930SC while playing music, tap
  To Phone.

Setting Repeat Mode

In Movie Playback window, tap Settings → *Repeat
mode* → Select an item

Setting Backlight

In Movie Playback window, tap Settings → *Backlight*
→ Select an item

Setting Vertical View Size

In Movie Playback window, tap Settings → *Vertical
view size* → Select an item

Setting Horizontal View Size

In Movie Playback window, tap Settings →
Horizontal view size → Select an item

Setting Thumbnail Display

In Movie Playback window, tap Settings → Under
Thumbnail display, *On* or *Off*

Accessing or Ignoring Linked Information

In Movie Playback window, tap Settings → Under
Web link, *On* or *Off*

Handy Extras

9

Saving Calendar Entries

Opening Calendar

1 Tap Menu → *Calendar*

Viewing Calendar

Select from three view modes.

- Tap Switch view to change View mode.
- If you select a date with Calendar entries saved, the entries appear.

Monthly View

Weekly View

Date in blue rectangle: Highlighted position
Back ground with grey: Today
Blue: Saturday
Red: Holiday/Sunday
◢ (Red): Schedule registered

Daily View

- To change Monthly/Weekly/Daily view window for previous/next month, tap ◀/▶ or scroll Year/Month/Day field.
- If you select a date with Calendar entries saved or Alarms set, the titles of the Calendar entries, icons and other items appear.
  - 📋 : Schedule (No category)
  - 👥 : Schedule (Appointment)
  - 👤 : Schedule (Meeting)
  - 💼 : Schedule (Business)
  - 😊 : Schedule (Personal)
  - ⛳ : Schedule (Holiday)
  - 🎀 : Schedule (Anniversary)
  - 🎂 : Schedule (Birthday)
  - ☎ : Schedule (Phone call)
  - ♥ : Schedule (Date)
  - ✈ : Schedule (Travel)
  - 👗 : Schedule (Shopping)
  - 🗯 : Schedule(Miscellaneous)
  - ⛳ : Holiday
  - 🔔 : Alarm set
  - 🔁 : Repetition set

Saving Schedule

Save up to 200 events including Tasks.
Example: Saving Title, Start date & time.

- For other items, see "Saving to Schedule" (➔P.9-11).

1 Tap Menu → *Calendar*

2 Tap Add new

3 Enter Title

4 *Start date* → Enter Start date → *Start time* → Enter Start time → Tap OK

5 Tap Save

- In Calendar, select target date before Step **2**, to enter the date in Start date or End date field.

Viewing Schedule

1 Tap Menu → *Calendar*

2 Tap the day to view

3 Select a schedule

- To check the status of Calendar items registered, in Calendar, tap More and select *Memory status* to view the registered number of Schedule and Task.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.9-11
- Saving to Schedule
- Editing Schedule
- Opening a Specific Date
- Switching View Mode
- Viewing Schedule by Category
- Sending Schedule
- Deleting Schedule
- Deleting Added Holiday
- Viewing Secret Schedule
- Checking Missed Alarm Event
- Viewing Calendar Memory Status
- Saving Schedule as vFile
- Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

Alarms

Save up to five Alarms. Use Alarm activation to activate or cancel alarm settings. Set alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

Setting Alarms

Example: Setting Alarm time
- For other items, see "Saving Alarm" (☞P.9-14).

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Alarm*

2 Tap Time field to set → Enter Alarm time

3 Tap Save
- Set or edit Alarm and tap Save, the Alarm is set *On* automatically.

- At Alarm Time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Handset vibrates if Vibration is not *Off*. Tap *OK* to stop Alarm.

- During a call or while dialing (*Connecting...* appears) at Alarm time, and while dialing (*Dialling...* appears), a tone sounds and an indicator appears. When *Call connect tone* on *System sounds* is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. View alarm content or tap *Close* to clear indicator.

- When Snooze is set other than *Off*, alarm sounds at the specified interval and specified number of times until Snooze is canceled. When you tap *Snooze* while alarm sounds, .alarm is set to sound again at the specified interval. When you tap *End* → Tap *OK*, the alarm stops and the indicator disappears.

- When Alarm is set, 🔔 appears in Standby.

- If multiple alarms are set for the same time, first one set sounds first. If Schedule or Tasks alarm is set for the same time as Alarm (*Tools*), Alarm sounds first.

- When Manner mode is active, setting in *For manner mode* (☞P.9-14) applies.

- If Camera or Voice Recorder is active at Alarm Time, Alarm sounds upon operation termination.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.9-14
- Resetting Alarm

Calculator

Perform arithmetic operations up to 15 digits.

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Calculator*

2 Enter numbers and operators

- To move the cursor, tap an area to place the cursor on.
- To erase a symbol in a mathematical expression, place the cursor after a symbol to erase and tap ← .
- To erase the mathematical expressions and the result at once, tap C .
- Tap fx to input more complex expressions such as those using pi, trigonometric function, or root. To return to number input window, tap 123 .

Currency or Unit Converter

Convert various currencies or units of measure.

Converting Currencies

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency*

2 Tap Select Original currency field → Select currency

3 Tap Original currency value field → Enter value

4 View result in Converted currency value field

- Tap Reset to reset convert.

Converting Units

1. Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Length, Weight, Volume, Area,* or *Temperature*

2. Tap Original unit field → Select currency

3. Tap Original unit value field → Enter value

4. View result in Converted value field

● Tap Reset to reset convert.

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.9-14
● Viewing Exchange Rate
● Adding Currency Unit
● Deleting Added Currency Unit

World Clock

See current time in world's major cities.

Viewing World Clock

1. Tap Menu → *Tools* → *World clock*

Selecting Areas

Save a second time zone to see the time in World clock.
Up to 20 areas can be registered.

1. Tap Menu → *Tools* → *World clock*

2. Tap Add new → Scroll map and tap a city to register
   ● To set a Daylight Saving Time, tap 🔳 or 🔳.

3. Tap Add new

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.9-15
● Deleting World Clock

Notepad

Add up to 20 memos. Memos can be added even during calls (❂P.3-20, P.3-23).

Adding Notepad

1. Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Notepad*

2. Tap Add new → Enter text

3. Select category

Viewing Notepad

1. Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Notepad* → Select the target

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.9-15
● Sending Notepad
● Deleting Notepad
● Viewing Notepad Memory Status

Tasks

Save up to 200 Tasks and Schedule and manage by list.

Saving Tasks

Example: Saving Title, Due date & time

● For other items, see "Saving Task" (●P.9-15).

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks*

2 Tap Add new

3 Enter a title

4 *Due date* → Enter date → *Due time* → Enter time → Tap OK

5 Tap Save

Viewing Tasks

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks*

● In Tasks, tap a tab to toggle *All tasks*, *Completed tasks*, *Uncompleted tasks*, and *Expired tasks*.

Marking a Task as Completed

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks*

2 Tap ◯ to complete

● Tapping ◯ toggles between *Completed tasks* and *Uncompleted task* (or *Expired tasks* if it expires the due date).

Advanced
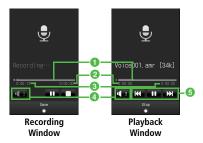
🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.9-15

● Saving Task
● Sending Tasks as vFile
● Deleting Tasks
● Viewing Secret Schedule
● Viewing Missed Alarm Event
● Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®
● Viewing Task Item Status
● Editing Tasks
● Saving Tasks as vFile

Voice Recorder

Record up to 60 minutes; activate from Tools, or via Menu in Data Folder, Create Message window or during a call.

Voice Recorder Window

Use Softkeys and Multi Selector operations to control Voice Recorder.

Recording Window | **Playback Window**

❶ Status bar

❷ Recordable time (recording)/Playback time

❸ Elapsed time

❹ Adjust volume

❺ Playback navigation

Recording Sound

Recorded sound is saved to *Ring sounds·tones* in Data Folder.

1. **Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder***

2. **Tap**

3. **Tap**
   ● Recording ends. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.
   ● Tap to pause recording.

● To quickly confirm the recorded content, tap . Tap again to pause playback.

● To start the next recording, tap Record.

Playing Sound

Play a sound file saved in Data Folder.

1. **Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder***

2. **Tap My sound**

3. **Select a sound file**

● Tap and use slider to adjust playback volume level.

● Tap / or scroll the Status bar to rewind or fast forward.

Advanced

Advanced Settings ☞ P.9-17
● Setting Recorded Sound File as Ringtone, etc.
● Moving Recorded Sound File
● Copying Recorded Sound File
● Sending Recorded Sound File
● Deleting Recorded Sound File
● Editing Recorded Sound File Name
● Protecting Recorded Sound File
● Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

Stopwatch

Use 930SC as a stopwatch; record up to 10 lap times and total time.

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Stopwatch*

2 *Start*

3 *Stop*

- While Stopwatch is running, tap *Lap* to mark a lap.
- Tap *Restart* to start Stopwatch again.
- Tap *Reset* to clear all of times.

Bar Code Reader

Use Camera to scan printed barcodes or use barcode images acquired from websites, etc.

Scanning Bar Code and QR Code

Bar Code Reader automatically determines and scans Bar codes (JAN code) and QR Codes. Use scan results for handset operations such as calling.

QR Code

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Scan barcode*

2 **Use Display to frame barcode → ▭**

- Alternatively, tap *Scan* to scan barcode.
- Camera continuously refocuses automatically during scanning until the code is scanned or scan canceled.

- Alternatively, tap Menu → *Camera* → *Bar code reader* to start scanning.
- Some barcodes may be invalid.
- Scan may fail if barcode is not clear.
- Indoors, scan may fail if handset shadows barcode.
- Scan may fail when capturing multiple barcodes.
- JAN codes are one-dimensional codes made up of combinations of vertical bars of varying widths and spaces. 930SC is not compatible other 1D codes (e.g., ITF code, Code39, or Codabar/NW-7).
- QR Code is two-dimensional code with information in matrix.
- Hold handset approximately ten centimeters away from barcode. If it does not scan, move 930SC slowly to adjust the distance to fix focus.
- To adjust brightness, tap Exposure.
- To save the scanned result, tap Save. To check the saved barcode, tap Results.
- To scan multiple barcodes continuously, tap Continuous after you activate Bar Code Reader then scan them. After a scan is complete, select *Yes* to scan the next barcode.
- Split barcode data cannot be opened or saved unless all split barcode data are scanned.

- You can use any phone numbers, email addresses, or other items for Phonebook entries if they are contained in the scanned data (⊙P.9-17). For those usable information, the background color of the text turns light blue; however, if the text contains any character that is not allowed to use for the information, the background area for the following characters does not turn light blue.
- Use QR Codes for text only. 930SC cannot scan image or music file QR Codes.

Using Barcode Files

Use a barcode file saved in Data Folder.

1. **Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Open barcode***
    - With Memory Card inserted, select a file from *Pictures* or *Digital camera* folder.

2. **Select a file**

- For split barcode, once one portion is scanned, the rest is automatically recognized and scanned. If file name or saved directory of a split barcode has been changed, select unrecognized part to scan.
- Barcode with changed file size may not scan.
- If barcode is unrecognizable, a message appears.

Creating QR Code

Use Phonebook or enter text to create QR Code.

- A single QR Code can encompass up to 211 alphanumerics or 105 Japanese characters.
- When volume of information is large, split QR Code automatically appears (Up to 16 QR Codes).
- Created QR Code is saved in *Pictures* in Data Folder. Check the saved QR Code in Data Folder (⊙P.9-9).

Creating QR Code from Phonebook

Create a QR Code from a saved phone number.

1. **Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Create QR code***

2. ***Phonebook* → Search and Select an entry (⊙P.2-16)**

3. **Select a phone number**

4. **Tap Save**

- Created QR Code contains Last name, Reading, Phone number, E-mail address, Address, and Memo. Other items will not be included.
- Tap Send in QR Code confirmation window to create S! Mail with the created QR Code attached.

Creating Text QR Code

Enter text and create QR Code.

1. **Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Create QR code***

2. ***Text input* → Enter text**

3. **Tap Save**

- In QR Code confirmation window, tap Send to create S! Mail and attach QR Code.

Checking Scanned Barcode

Check the saved scanned result.

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Scanned results*

2 Select a result

● Scanned result too large to open does not appear. Some files cannot be opened.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.9-17
● Specifying Saving Location of Created QR Code

File Viewer

Using File Viewer

View document files in portrait or landscape view. When you rotate 930SC vertically or horizontally, the screen also rotates automatically.

● This guide illustrates operational procedures in vertical view.

Portrait View

Landscape View

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer*

2 Select a file

3 Scroll the file to view
● Alternatively, tap △, ▽, ◁, ▷ to scroll.

● Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in Data Folder. Select an image file saved in Data Folder and File Viewer is activated automatically.
● Files with up to approximately 10 MB can be browsed. Some file with less than 10 MB may not be browsed.

Note

●**If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not appear properly.**
●**A file in any language other than Japanese or English may not appear properly.**

Zoom In/Out Browser Screen

1. **Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file**

2. **🔍 → 🔍 or 🔍 to adjust magnification**

Send　Go to　Search　More

● Alternatively, press ↑/↓ to adjust magnification.

● Tap 🔳 to show a file to fit Display height. Tap 🔳 to show a file to fit Display width.

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.9-18

● Sending Files
● Going to Pages
● Searching String within Page
● Capturing Images
● Editing File Name
● Protecting File

Dictionary

Look up words in English/Japanese dictionaries.

1. **Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Dictionary***

2. **From pulldown menu, select *English* or *Japanese***

3. **Tap a word field → Enter a word**

4. **🔍 → Select a target word**

🔧 **Advanced Settings**

Calendar

Saving to Schedule

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap Add new → Enter title → *Start date* → Enter Start date → *Start time* → Enter Start time → Tap OK

■ **To set End date & time**
  End date & time → *End date* → Enter End date → *End time* → Enter End time → Tap OK→ Tap Save

■ **To set Schedule for all day**
  Start date & time or *End date & time* → Check *All day* → Tap OK → Tap Save

■ **To set Category**
  Category → Select an item → Tap Save

■ **To set Alarm**
  Alarm → *Alarm time* → Select an item → *Duration* → Select an item → *Alert tone/video* → Select a file location → Select a file → Adjust volume → *Vibration* → Select an item → Tap OK → Tap Save
  ● For *Other* in Alarm time or Duration, enter alarm time or duration.
  ● While selecting Alert tone/video, tap ▶ to playback a file.
  ● While selecting vibration pattern, tap ▶ to view a pattern.

- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to 930SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 930SC confirmation appears.

■ **To repeat a set Schedule**

Repeat → Enter an item → Enter a number of times to repeat → Tap Save

- If *No repetition* is selected, you do not need to select a number of times to repeat.

■ **To set Location**

Location → Enter location → Tap Save

■ **To automatically delete Schedule**

Expiry → Enter an item → Tap Save

- Upon expiry, schedule is automatically deleted from Calendar (e.g. if Expiry is *After 1 year*, and Repetition is unset, schedule is deleted one year from event end date). If Repetition is set, schedule is deleted one year after last repetition. Select *Off* to cancel auto delete.

■ **To set Details**

Details → Enter content → Tap Save

■ **To set Secret**

Under *Secret*, *On* or *Off* → Tap Save

Editing Schedule

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap a date → Tap a schedule → Tap Edit → Save to Schedule (◎ P.9-11) → Tap Save

Opening a Specific Date

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap Go to

■ **To show today's date**

Today

■ **To toggle to a specified date**

Date → Enter date

Switching View Mode

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap Switch view

Viewing Schedule by Category

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *List by category* → Select a item

Sending Schedule

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Send*

■ **To send via Message**

Via message → Check a schedule → (◎ P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**

Via Bluetooth → Check a schedule → Tap Send → (◎ P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**

Via infrared → Check a schedule → Tap Send (◎ P.12-3)

- Alternatively, in the detailed information window for the schedule to send, tap Send and select an item to send it.

Deleting Schedule

Tap Menu → *Calendar*

■ **To delete an entry**

Select a schedule → Tap *Delete* → *Yes*

■ **To delete all schedules of selected date**

Tap a date to delete in the Monthly view or Weekly view → Tap More → *Delete* → *All this day* → *Yes*

- To delete schedules in the date displayed in the Daily view, tap More → *Delete* → Check schedules to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

■ **To delete schedules for a specified period of time**

In the Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → *Delete* → *Periods* → *From* → Enter Start date → *To* → Enter End date → Tap OK → *Yes*

■ **To delete schedules of currently displayed month or week**

In the Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → *Delete* → *This month* or *This week* → *Yes*

■ **To delete all schedules before the highlighted date**

In the Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → *Delete* → *All past data* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

■ **To delete all schedules**

In the Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

■ **To delete multiple schedules listed by category**

In the Monthly view or Weekly view, tap More → *List by category* → Select a category → Tap Delete → Check schedules to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

● When tapping *Mark all*, enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Setting Holiday

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Tap Add new → Enter title → Enter Date → Select frequency → Tap Save

Changing Holiday Display

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Check a holiday setting to enable

Editing Added Holiday

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Tap Edit → Select an entry → Edit the entry → Tap Save

Deleting Added Holiday

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Tap Delete → Check entries to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Setting the Beginning of a Week

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Settings* → *Starting day* → *Sunday* or *Monday*

Setting Default Calendar View

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Settings* → *Default view mode* → Select an item

Setting Reminder

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Settings* → *Reminder* → Under *On/Off*, *On*

■ **To set remind time**
Tap Time field → Enter a time → Tap Save

■ **To set Alarm sound duration**
Duration → Select an item → Tap Save

● When selecting *Other*, enter duration.

■ **To set Alarm sound or video**
Alert tone/video → Select a folder → Select a file → Tap Save

● In selecting file window, tap ▶ to playback a file.

● If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to 930SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 930SC confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.

■ **To adjust Alarm volume**
Adjust volume → Tap Save

■ **To set Vibration**
Vibration → Select an item → Tap Save

● Tap ▶ to view a pattern.

Viewing Secret Schedule

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Checking Missed Alarm Event

Tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Missed alarm event* → Select a schedule

Viewing Calendar Memory Status

In the Monthly view or Weekly view, tap Menu → *Calendar* → Tap More → *Memory status*

Saving Schedule as vFile

In Daily view, tap More → *Save to data folder* → Select an item → Select a schedule → *Yes*

● Save location can be set to *Memory card* if inserted.

Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

In Daily view, tap More → *Print via Bluetooth* → Select a schedule (●P.7-11 Printing via Bluetooth® ❹)

Alarm

Saving Alarm

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Alarm* → Tap Time field →
Enter Alarm time → Tap OK

■ **To edit Alarm name**
Tap Alarm name field → Enter Alarm name → Tap
Save

■ **To set repeat setting**
In *Repeat*, tap a day to activate the alarm → Tap
Save
● When you set the alarm to be activated only for a
specific day, the Alarm will be activated only
once.
● When you set the alarm to be activated on every
day, the Alarm will be activated on every day.

■ **To set Alarm sound or video**
Alert tone/video → Select a file to save → Select
file → Tap Save
● If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy
to 930SC confirmation appears. For a copy
protected file, move to 930SC confirmation
appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.
● Tap ▶ to playback a file.

■ **To adjust Alarm volume**
Adjust volume → Tap Save

■ **To set Vibration**
Vibration → Select an item → Tap Save
● Tap ▶ to view a pattern.

■ **To set Snooze**
Snooze → Select an item → Tap Save
● When Snooze is set other than *Off*, alarm sounds
at the specified interval and specified number of
times until Snooze is canceled. When you tap
Snooze while alarm sounds, alarm is set to
sound again at the specified interval. When you
tap *End* → *OK*, the alarm stops and the
indicator disappears.
● For *Other*, enter duration.

■ **To set Snooze repeat time(s)**
Snooze repeat times → Select an item → Tap
Save

■ **To set Alarm duration time**
Duration → Select an item → Tap Save
● For *Other*, enter duration

Setting/Canceling Alarm

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Alarm* → *On* or *Off* beside
each alarm

Resetting Alarm

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Alarm* → Tap Reset → Check
an Alarm → Tap Reset → *Yes*

Setting Volume or Vibration in Manner Mode

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Alarm* → Tap Settings

■ **To set Alarm volume**
Adjust volume → Tap OK

■ **To set Vibration**
Under *Vibration, On* or *Off* → Tap OK

Currency/Unit Conversion

Viewing Exchange Rate

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* →
Tap currency field → Select Original currency → Tap
View rate

Changing Exchange Rate

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* →
Tap View rate → Select a currency → Enter rate

Adding Currency Unit

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* →
Tap View rate → Tap Add rate → Enter currency unit
name → Enter rate

Deleting Added Currency Unit

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* →
Tap View rate → Tap Delete rate → Check currency
unit to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*
● When *Mark all* is tapped, tap Delete → Enter
Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

World Clock

Deleting World Clock

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *World clock* → Tap Delete → Check an item → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Notepad

Sending Notepad

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Notepad* → Tap Send → Select a Notepad → (⊘P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)
● Alternatively, in detail window, tap Send to send.

Deleting Notepad

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Notepad* → Tap Delete → Check a Notepad → Tap Delete → *Yes*
● Enter Phone Password to delete all entries.
● Alternatively, in detail window, tap Delete to delete one notepad.

Viewing Notepad Memory Status

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Notepad* → *Memory status*

Editing Notepad

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Notepad* → Select a notepad → Tap text field → Edit the notepad

Changing Notepad Category

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Notepad* → Select a notepad → Tap category field → Select category

Tasks

Saving Task

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Tap Add new → Enter title → *Due date* → Enter Due date → *Due time* → Enter time → Tap OK

■ **Setting Priority**
Priority → Select an item → Tap Save

■ **Setting Alarm**
Alarm → *Alarm time* → Select an item → *Duration* → Select an item → *Alert tone/video* → Select a location to save → Select a file → Adjust volume → *Vibration* → Select an item → Tap OK → Tap Save

● When *Other* is selected in Alarm time, enter Alarm date and time.
● When *Other* is selected in Duration, enter duration time.
● While selecting Alert tone, tap ▶ to playback a file.
● While selecting vibration pattern, tap ▶ to view a pattern.
● If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to 930SC confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to 930SC confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to complete setting.
● At Alarm Time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Tap *OK* to stop Alarm and indicator is cleared. If no alarm is stopped, Missed Alarm message appears. Tap the message to view the event.

- During a call, while dialing (*Connecting...* appears) or while dialing (*Dialling...* appears), at Alarm time, a tone sounds and an indicator appears. When *Call connect tone* on *System sounds* is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. Tap *Close* to hide the Indicator.

■ **To set Details**
Details → Enter content → Tap Save

■ **To activate or cancel Secret**
Under *Secret*, *On* or *Off* → Tap Save

Sorting Tasks
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → From pulldown menu, select *Deadline* or *Priority*

Sending Tasks as vFile
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Tap Send

■ **To send via message**
Via message → Select a Task → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → Check tasks → Tap Send (●P.12-6 Sending ❷)

■ **To send via infrared**
Via infrared → Check tasks → Tap Send (●P.12-3)

- Alternatively, in task details window, tap Send and select an item to send.

Deleting Tasks
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks*

■ **To select a tab and delete**
All tasks, *Completed tasks*, *Uncompleted tasks*, or *Expired tasks* tab → Tap Delete → *Delete in this tab* → Check tasks to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

■ **To delete all tasks**
Tap Delete → *Delete all tasks* → Enter Phone Password → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in task details window, tap Delete to delete one.

Viewing Secret Schedule
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Tap More → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

Viewing Missed Alarm Event
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Tap More → *Missed alarm event* → Select a missed task to check

- Alternatively, in task details window, tap More → *Missed alarm event* to view.

Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Tap More → *Print via Bluetooth* → Select a task → (●P.7-11 Printing via Bluetooth® ❹)

- Alternatively, in task details window, tap More → *Print via Bluetooth*.

Viewing Task Item Status
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Tap More → *Memory status*

Editing Tasks
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Select a task to edit → Tap Edit → Edit Notepad (●P.9-15) → Tap Save

Saving Tasks as vFile
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Select a task → Tap More → *Save to data folder* → Select an item → *Yes*

- With Memory Card inserted, *Memory card* can be set as save location.

Voice Recorder

Setting Recorded Sound File as Ringtone, etc.

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Record a sound → Tap Save → Select a ringtone

- If *Caller ringtone* is selected, search and select a Phonebook entry (➡P.2-16).

Moving Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Record a sound → Tap My sounds → Tap Move → Select an item → Check a file to move → Tap Move → Select a location to save

Copying Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Record a sound → Tap My sounds → Tap Copy → Select an item → Check a file to copy → Tap Copy → Select a location to save

Sending Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Record a sound → Tap More → *Send*

- **To send via message**
  Via message → (➡P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)
- **To send via Bluetooth®**
  Via Bluetooth → (➡P.12-6 Sending ❷)
- **To send via infrared**
  Via infrared (➡P.12-3)

Deleting Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Record a sound → Tap More → *Delete* → *Yes*

Editing Recorded Sound File Name

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Record a sound → Tap More → *Rename* → Enter file name

Protecting Recorded Sound File

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Record a sound → Tap More → *Lock* or *Unlock*

Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Record a sound → Tap More → *Details*

Changing Default Name at Saving

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Tap Rec. settings → Tap file name field → Enter file name

Changing Recording Time

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Tap Rec. settings → *Recording time* → Select an item

Changing Default Saving Location

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Voice recorder* → Tap Rec. settings → *Set default memory* → Select an item

- If Memory card is not inserted, files are automatically saved to 930SC.

Bar Code Reader

Using Scanned Data

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Scan barcode* → Scan a barcode

- **To call scanned phone number**
  Select a number with *TEL:* or 10 to 32-digit number starting with 0 → *Select* → *Voice call*, *Video call*, or *Edit before call*
  - If *Edit before call* is selected, edit the phone number then tap Voice call or Video call.
- **To send Mail to scanned phone number**
  Select a number with *TEL:* or 10 to 32-digit number starting with 0 → *Select* → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* (➡P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❺, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❺)
- **To send Mail to scanned mail address**
  Highlight mail address contained with "@" → *Select* → *Create message* → (➡P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❺)
- **To access scanned URL**
  Highlight URL starting with *http://* or *rtsp://* → *Select* → *Go to URL* → *Yes*
- **To save scanned entry to Phonebook**
  Highlight an entry → *Select* → Tap Save
- **To save scanned number, etc. as a new Phonebook entry**
  Highlight a phone number, etc. → *Select* → *Add to phonebook* → *New* → (➡P.2-14 Creating New Entries ❷)

■ **To add scanned number, etc. to an existing Phonebook entry**
Highlight a phone number, etc. → *Select* → *Add to phonebook* → *Update* → Search Phonebook and select entry (●P.2-16) → Creating New Entries (●P.2-14)

■ **To add scanned URL to Bookmarks**
Highlight a URL → *Select* → *Add to bookmark* → Enter a title

■ **To copy scanned mail address or phone number, etc.**
Highlight an E-mail address or phone number → Tap Copy → Select an item
● For *Copy Text*, tap the first character to copy then tap Start point → Tap the last character to copy to specify the copy range → Tap End point.

■ **To paste scanned phone number, mail address, etc. to Message text**
Tap Send → Tap OK → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❷)

■ **To paste a scanned phone number or mail address to Message text**
Tap Send → Tap Cut → Tap the first letter and Tap Start point → Tap the last letter and set range → Tap End point → Tap OK → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ❷)

■ **To copy scanned characters**
Tap Copy → Tap the first letter and select Tap Start point → Tap the end of letter and set range → Tap End point

Specifying Saving Location of Created QR Code
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Create QR code* → *Phonebook* or *Text input* → (●P.9-9 Creating QR Code from Phonebook ❷, P.9-9 Creating Text QR Code ❷) → Tap Save to → Select an item → Tap Save

Attaching Created QR Code to Message to Send
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Bar code reader* → *Create QR code* → *Phonebook* or *Text input* → (●P.9-9 Creating QR Code from Phonebook ❷, P.9-9 Creating Text QR Code ❷) → Tap Send → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)

File Viewer

Deleting Files
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file → ▣ → *Yes*

Viewing File Details
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file → ◎

Sending Files
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file → Tap *Send*

■ **To send via message**
Via message → (●P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ❷)
■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → (●P.12-6 Sending ❷)
■ **To send via infrared**
Via infrared (●P.12-3)

Going to Pages
Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file → Tap *Move* → Select an item
● For *Page*, specify page number.

Searching String within Page

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file →
Tap Search → Enter keyword

- After the search results appear, to find the next/
  previous word in the document that matches the
  same search word, tap Next/Prev.
- To exit the search mode, tap End Search.
- To try to search with other words without exiting, tap
  New search.

Capturing Images

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file →
Tap More → *Capture screen*

- Captured image is saved in JPEG format to *Pictures*
  in Data Folder of 930SC.

Editing File Name

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file →
Tap More → *Rename* → Enter file name

Protecting File

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file →
Tap More → *Lock* or *Unlock*

Assigning Scroll Range

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file →
Tap More → *Settings* → *Panning* → Select an item

- Assign scroll range for each tap △, ▽, ◁ or
  ▷.

Fit to Display

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file →
Tap More → *Settings* → Under *Reflow*, *On* or *Off*

- When *On*, content is fit to Display size.

Setting Map

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file →
Tap More → *Settings* → Under *Map on*, *On* or *Off*

- Current position is framed in blue.

Editing Default File Name at Screen Capture

Tap Menu → *Tools* → *File viewer* → Select a file →
Tap More → *Settings* → Select Screen capture name
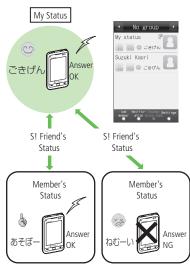→ Enter file name

Communication Services

10

S! Friend's Status

Check members' current mood or availability.

● S! Friend's Status requires a separate subscription.
● Available on S! Friend's Status-compatible models.

My Status

● Adding entries to Members List makes their status available. Status is updated automatically.

Note

● **Confirm *IP service setting* (🔗P.13-18) is set to *On* before using the service.**

Viewing S! Friend's Status Window

Members List Window

Member Status Window

❶ Group name of S! Friend's Status

❷ Your information (My Status) (🔗P.10-5)

❸ Member's information

❹ Answer status
Call or message answer status

❺ Standby Window setting status
Appears when Set StandbyWindow is set to *Yes*.

❻ Image, name, and phone number
Image saved in Account Details appears in My Status. Image, name, phone number, or group saved in Phonebook appears in Member Status.

❼ Status icon and status label
Indicates your/member's status.

❽ Network connection status
Indicates your/member's connection status

❾ Comment

S! Friend's Status Notification

Alerts for S! Friend's Status Request, etc.

● Notification is sent to person added or removed from S! Friend's Status members list.

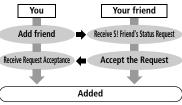See S! Friend's Status Notification types below:

Type	Description
S! Friend's Status Request	You are added to S! Friend's Status members list.
Request Acceptance	Your request for S! Friend's Status members list is accepted.
Request Rejection	Your S! Friend's Status members list request is rejected or no reply has been received within two hours.
Cancel Request	You are removed from S! Friend's Status members list.
Offline Notification	S! Friend's Status is not available due to network trouble.

S! Friend's Status Members List

Add a member to S! Friend's Status members list to enable information sharing with other members.

● Add up to 30 members.

Adding Members

You		Your friend
Add friend	➡	Receive S! Friend's Status Request
Receive Request Acceptance	⬅	Accept the Request

Added

● When added to the list, your S! Friend's Status (My Status) is sent making information sharable.

Note

● **When network connection status (⊙P.10-6) is *Offline*, adding members to the list is not available. When adding members, make sure to set network connection status to *Online*.**

Adding from Phonebook or Phone Number

1. **Tap Menu → *Communication* → *S! Friend's Status***

   ● When no member is saved, choose *Yes* and go to Step ③.

2. **Tap Add member**

3. **Add members**

   ■ **To use Phonebook**
   Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (⊙P.2-16) → Select phone number

   ■ **To enter phone number**
   New entry → Tap Add phone number field → Enter phone number → Tap Save

4 Send request confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- After Request is accepted and Request Acceptance received, member is added.
- S! Friend's Status information changes to *Waiting* and status to *Unknown*.

- If you do not wish to show your status upon initial registration by default, change My Status first.

Note
- When 30 members are saved, none can be added. Delete members to add new ones.
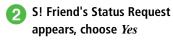- If handset is incompatible, Request Not Available notification appears.

Adding from Received Request

Add members via S! Friend's Status Request.
- When received, add sender confirmation appears. Follow these steps to add members.

1 Tap notification → Select S! Friend's Status Request

2 S! Friend's Status Request appears, choose *Yes*

- Request Acceptance is returned and new member is added to the list.
- Choose *No* to reject the Request. Request Rejection is sent (Member is not added).
- To check later, select *Check Later*.

- Request Rejection is automatically sent:
  - Not available to reply within two hours.
  - 30 members are already saved.

Note
- For *No*, Request Rejection is sent. The person who sent Request cannot be added to members list for 24 hours.
- If Request Rejection is not received within 24 hours, Request is resent.

Setting My Status

Set S! Friend's Status information as follows.

My Status Details Window

1 **Tap Menu → *Communication* → *S! Friend's Status* → *My status***

My Status Details Window

❶ Image
Show images saved in Account details.

❷ Standby Window Setting Status
Appears when Set StandbyWindow is set to *Yes*.

❸ Network connection status (🔗P.10-6)

❹ Status icon and status label
Change pictograms (status icon) and short sentence (status label). Change status icon and label in Status setting. Change status icon and label by tapping Edit (🔗P.10-7).

❺ Answer status batch change
Change Answer status of call or message at once.

❻ Answer status
Change Answer status of call or message.

❼ Comment
Edit Short message (up to 15 characters)

Changing My Status Information

1 **Open My Status Details Window → Select item to change (except network connection status) → Select setting → Tap Update**

• Changed My Status is sent to members.

Set following items.

Item	Settings	
Status setting	16 combinations of status icons and labels	
One time settings		
	All OK	Call: Answer OK Mail: Reply OK
	Mail only OK	Call: Answer NG Mail: Reply OK
	All NG	Call: Answer NG Mail: Check Later
	User Setting	_ *
Call	Answer OK, Urgency only, Answer NG	
Mail	Reply OK, Check Later	
Comment	Max. 15 characters	

* Change answer settings in *My status one time settings* (🔗P.10-7).

Advanced

🔧 **Advanced Settings** ☞P.10-6

● Setting whether or not to show My status in Widget screen
● Adding S! Friend's Status members to Widget
● Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification
● Deleting S! Friend's Status Notification
● Adding Members to Phonebook
● Editing Members in Phonebook
● Editing Group Names
● Setting My Image
● Setting Images of S! Friend's Status Members

🔧 **Settings**

● Set IP service setting (☞P.13-18)

🔧 **Advanced Settings**

S! Friend's Status

Setting S! Friend's Status Connection

Open My Status details → *Online/Offline* in Network connection status field → *Yes*

● Set to *Online* for editing or updating My Status.

Setting whether or not to show My status in Widget screen

Open My Status details → Tap Set StandbyWindow → *Yes* or *No*

● Choose *Yes* or *No* to show or hide *My status* in Widget screen respectively.

Adding S! Friend's Status members to Widget

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member to set → Tap Set StandbyWindow → *Yes* → Select save location

● If Widget is full, add members by overwriting the existing one. Or tap Delete → Check members to delete → Tap Delete to delete existing members, then add members.

Viewing S! Friend's Status Notification

In S! Friend's Status members list, tap Notification → Select a notification list to view

● Tap each notification to check notification details.
● Request notification can also be selected (☞P.10-4).

Deleting S! Friend's Status Notification

In S! Friend's Status members list, tap Notification → Tap Delete → Check notification to delete → Tap Delete

Making a Voice/Video Call and Sending a Mail

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member

■ **To make a call**
Tap Phone field of Answer status → Select an item

■ **To send a message**
Tap Message field of Answer status → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (☞P.4-3 Sending S! Mail ⑤, P.4-6 Sending SMS Messages ⑤)

● Alternatively, in S! Friend's Status members list, tap Answer status to make a Voice/Video Call and send a Mail.

Adding Members to Phonebook

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member →
Tap Add phonebook → (♦P.2-34 Enter and Save
Phone Number)

Editing Members in Phonebook

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member →
Tap Edit phonebook → Edit phonebook (♦P.2-14)

Setting Actions When Saving

In S! Friend's Status members list, tap Settings →
Request reply → Select an item

- If *Do not answer* is selected, Rejection request is
always returned.

Setting Answer Status

In S! Friend's Status members list, tap Settings → *My
status one time settings* → *User Settings* → Select
answer status → Select answer status icon → Tap
Save

Changing Status Icons or Status Labels

In S! Friend's Status members list, tap Settings →
Status setting → Select an icon to change → *Status
Icon* → Select an icon → *Status Label* → Enter text
→ Tap Save → *Yes*

- Selectable icons in Status Icon is same as those for
pictograms.
- Up to 4 characters can be entered in Status Label.

Updating Lists

In S! Friend's Status members list, tap Settings →
Update list

- Information in S! Friend's Status is basically updated
automatically.

Editing Group Names

In S! Friend's Status members list, ◄ / ► to switch to
group to edit name → Tap Change group name →
Enter group name

Changing Groups

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member to
change group → Tap Group field → Select a group to
change

Removing a Member

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member to
remove → Tap Unregister → *Yes*

- The removed member cannot be added to the list for
24 hours.
- If Unregistered notification is not received by the
removed member within 24 hours, the S! Status
Request is sent from the member.

Editing Names

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member to
edit name → Tap Name field → Tap Last name field
→ Edit → Tap First name field → Edit → Tap Save

■ **To add unregistered members**
Tap Add phonebook → (♦P.2-34 Enter and Save
Phone Number)

■ **To edit registered members**
Tap Edit phonebook → Edit phonebook (♦P.2-14)

- The name in Phonebook is also changed.

Setting My Image

Open My Status Details Window → Tap Change picture

■ **To set from saved still image**

Pictures → Select a file

• With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders after *Pictures* is selected.

■ **To set by capturing still image**

Take photo → Capture still image (☉P.7-5 Single Shot ❷ to ❹)

■ **To cancel set image**

Off

• The image in Account details is also changed.

Setting Images of S! Friend's Status Members

In S! Friend's Status members list, select a member to change the incoming image → Tap Change picture

■ **To set from saved still image**

Pictures → Select a file → Tap Add phonebook or Edit phonebook

• With Memory Card inserted, files can be selected from *Pictures* and *Digital camera* folders after *Pictures* is selected.

■ **To set by capturing still image**

Take photo → Capture still image (☉P.7-5 Single Shot ❷ to ❹) → Tap Add phonebook or Edit phonebook

■ **To cancel the incoming image to set**

Off → Tap Add phonebook or Edit phonebook

• To add unregistered members to phonebook, tap Add phonebook → (☉P.2-34 Enter and Save Phone Number). To edit the members registered in phonebook, tap Edit phonebook → Edit phonebook (☉P.2-14).

• The incoming image in Phonebook is also changed.

Handset Security

11

Changing Phone Password

By default, Phone password is set to "9999".

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Change password*

```
Current password

┌─────────────────────┐
│                     │
└─────────────────────┘
  ↵    └┘   Clear
  1     2     3
  4     5     6
  7     8     9
        0
  OK         Cancel
  ●          ●
```

2 Enter current Phone Password → Tap OK

3 Enter new Phone Password (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK

4 Enter new Phone Password again → Tap OK

Advanced

Settings
● Change Phone Password (☞P.13-17)

Setting PINs

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For details, see "USIM Card" (◐P.14-4).

PIN Certification

To activate PIN certification each time the power is turned on, set this function to *On*.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security*

2 Under *PIN certification*, *On* or *Off*

3 Enter PIN → Tap OK

Changing PIN/PIN2

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Change PIN* or *Change PIN2*

● Set *PIN certification* to *On* to enable PIN or PIN2 codes (◐P.11-2).

2 Enter current PIN or PIN2 → Tap OK

3 Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK

4 Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK

Canceling PIN Lock

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN lock or PIN2 lock is activated to restrict handset operations. To cancel PIN lock or PIN2 lock, perform following operations.

1. **In PUK Code entry window, enter PUK Code → Tap OK**

2. **Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK**

3. **Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK**

Note

- **For more information about PUK and PUK2, contact Customer Service (⊙P.14-29).**
- **Entering incorrect PUK Code 10 consecutive times locks USIM Card (turning 930SC off does not reset the count).**
- **Once locked, USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact Customer Service (⊙P.14-29).**

Advanced

⚒ Settings
- Activate or cancel PIN Certification (☞P.13-17)
- Change PIN (☞P.13-17)
- Change PIN2 (☞P.13-17)

Setting USIM Lock

Activate this function to require USIM Password entry to use 930SC with a different USIM Card.

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security***

2. **Under *USIM lock*, *On* or *Off***

3. **Enter USIM Password (4 to 8 digits) → Tap OK**

   - To set to *On*, enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits) again and tap OK.

- USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in 930SC. Change USIM Password each time *USIM lock* is set to *On*.
- If you forget USIM Password, insert USIM Card with *USIM lock* set to *On* and reset all settings (⊙P.11-8).

Advanced

⚒ Settings
- Activate or cancel USIM Lock (☞P.13-17)

Locking & Restricting Handset Operations

Phone Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password entry each time 930SC is powered on.

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security***

2. **Under *Phone lock*, *On* or *Off***

3. **Enter Phone Password → Tap OK**

- All operations including receiving calls are not accepted unless you enter Phone Password.

Auto Lock

If it is *On*, *Key lock* is automatically activated when the display is turned off.

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Phone settings***

2. **Under *Auto lock*, *On* or *Off***

Password Lock

After *Password lock* is activated, the phone password is required for handset operations such as turning on the handset or turning off the display. No operations are accepted until you enter the correct password, except some operations such as receiving calls.

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security***

2. ***Password lock***

3. **Select an option**

   ■ **To activate it when turning off the display**
   Auto

   ■ **To activate it when turning on the handset**
   At power On

   ■ **To deactivate it**
   Off

4. **Enter Phone Password → Tap OK**

Function Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password entry to open Phonebook, Calendar, Notepad, Messaging, Call log, or Data Folder.

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Function lock***

2. **Check functions to lock → Tap Save**

3. **Enter Phone Password → Tap OK**

Secret Mode

Select *Hide* to activate this function and hide Secret Phonebook entries, Messaging folders, Calendar schedules, or Tasks.

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Secret mode***

2. **Enter Phone Password → Tap OK**

3. ***Show* or *Hide***

- Powering 930SC off then back on activates Secret mode.

Handset Security

11

11-4

Mobile Tracker

Activate this function to send SMS notification to a specified address when a different USIM Card is inserted. Specify up to 2 addresses.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Mobile tracker*

2 Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

3 Under *On/Off, On*

4 Tap Recipients field

5 *Enter number* → Enter address
- To enter an address from phonebook, select *Phonebook* → Search Phonebook and search entry (❷P.2-16) → Select a phone number.

6 *Sender* → Enter sender name

7 Tap Save → Confirm message

8 Tap Agree
- Not to agree to the message, tap Reject.

- When a different USIM Card is inserted, SMS notification is sent to the specified address upon 930SC activation. Nothing appears on 930SC. If Phone Password is incorrectly entered three consecutive times when trying to set Mobile Tracker, SMS notification is also sent.

Advanced

⚙ Settings
- Activate or cancel Phone Lock (☞P.13-17)
- Activate or cancel Password Lock (☞P.13-17)
- Activate or cancel Function Lock (☞P.13-17)
- Activate or cancel Secret mode (☞P.13-17)
- Activate Mobile Tracker (☞P.13-18)

Facial Recognition

When powered on, 930SC verifies user with a registered image. If Facial recognition fails, 930SC is disabled.

- Facial recognition matches current image to one saved beforehand. When capturing images or using Facial recognition, remember the following points:
  - Make sure your face (eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, etc.) is clearly visible. Facial features may be obscured by hair, colored glasses, hat, etc., inhibiting image capture or recognition.
  - The face should be lit evenly and brightly. Avoid backlight, strong light, or shadows.

Note
- **Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages associated with Facial recognition.**
- **Phone Password is required for Facial recognition settings or cancellation upon recognition failure. Changing Phone Password enhances security (❷P.11-2).**

Using Facial Recognition

User Registration

Save up to five users. Save up to five images per user. Change location (home, office, inside vehicle or station, etc.) or condition (face angle, accessories, glasses, etc.) for each shot.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition*

2 *User registration*

3 Select from *User 1* to *User 5*

4 Select from *Image1* to *Image5* → Tap Capture

5 Frame your face on Display → Tap Capture → Tap Save

● After saving image, if *On/Off* in *Facial recognition* is *Off*, an activation confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Facial recognition.

● Image capture may take time. Stay still until complete.
● A confirmation appears if registration fails. Change shooting conditions and start over.
● Saving multiple images increase recognition accuracy, however, security may be compromised.
● The same image can be saved to multiple users. This may increase recognition accuracy.
● Look straight and frame whole face with no expression. If face is too small, image may not be saved. Do not change face angle while shooting.

Toggling Facial Recognition

Activate Facial recognition. Save a user beforehand.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition*

2 Under *On/Off, On* or *Off* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

● Set to *On* to match your face to the saved portrait when 930SC is turned on. If the recognition fails, 930SC is disabled.

Recognition Guidance

Activate this function to show guidance in Facial recognition. Cancel it for recognition message with no image. Select to *Preview* to show image.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition*

2 *Guidance*

3 *Off* or *Preview*

Setting Security Level

Select recognition accuracy level.

● Accuracy levels are as follows.

Item	Description
High	Unsaved faces are least likely to be recognized by mistake. However, your face may also be difficult to recognize.
Normal	An intermediate setting.
Low	Your face is most recognizable. However, unsaved faces are more likely to be recognized by mistake.

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial recognition*

Handset Security

11

2 *Security level*

3 *High, Normal,* or *Low*

Starting Facial Recognition

Facial recognition starts when the power is turned on. When face is recognized, 930SC is enabled.

1 **Face Display**

● When *Guidance* (❷P.11-6) is *Preview*, image appears. When face is recognized, focus moves to recognized face. Recognition result appears with *Matching* (green frame), *Similar* (yellow frame), or *Unknown* (red frame).

● Internal camera is used for Facial recognition. Dust or smudges on the lens may lead to recognition failure. Clean with a soft cloth before use.

If Facial Recognition Fails

To try again, tap Recog.
If recognition fails, tap Code to enter Phone Password, and tap OK so that your access to the handset is granted.

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.11-8
● Deleting Images

🔧 Settings
● Activate or cancel Facial recognition (☞P.13-17)
● Save Facial recognition User (☞P.13-17)
● Show or hide Guidance (☞P.13-17)
● Set Security Level (☞P.13-17)

Restoring Default Settings

Clearing Phone Memory

Clear Data Folder, Messaging, 930SC Phonebook, Calendar/Tasks, or User's dictionary. Alternatively, clear all 930SC files at once.
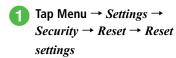
1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Phone memory* → Tap Clear**

2 **Check items → Tap Clear**

3 **Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes***

Handset Security

11-7

Resetting Settings

Clear saved contents/settings regarding *Settings*, *Alarms* in *Tools*, and *TV* (other than *TV links* and *Reservation list*); then restore default settings.

The following settings are not affected.

Item	Unaffected Settings
Call settings	*Voice mail On* settings *Call forwarding On* settings *Call waiting* settings *Call barring* settings *Edit Black list* contents
Phonebook	Entry details, Group settings
Security	*USIM lock, PIN certification,* *Change PIN, Change PIN2*

1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* →**
   Security → Reset → Reset
   settings

2 **Enter Phone Password → Tap**
   OK → *Yes*

All Reset

Restore 930SC to defaults and delete Phonebook (Phone), Messaging, and Data Folder contents/settings. However, preinstalled files are not deleted.

1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* →**
   Security → Reset → All reset

2 **Enter Phone Password → Tap**
   OK → *Yes*

Advanced

🔧 **Settings**

● Delete Phonebook entries, messages, etc.
  (☞P.13-17)
● Restore Settings to default values (☞P.13-17)

🔧 Advanced Settings

Facial Recognition

Editing User Information

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial*
recognition → *User registration* → Select user →
(❷P.11-6 User Registration ❹)

Viewing Images

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial*
recognition → *User registration* → Select a user
→ Select image

● When multiple portraits are saved, tap ◀ or ▶ to
  check another one.

Deleting Images

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security* → *Facial*
recognition → *User registration* → Select a user
→ Select image → Tap Delete → *Yes*

Connectivity & File Backup

12

Connectivity

Transfer files wirelessly between 930SC and other Infrared or Bluetooth®-compatible devices, or connect 930SC to PCs or printers via USB Cable.

Transmission Types

Transfer files via Infrared or Blutooth® as follows.

Transmission Type	Description
Transfer Each	Receive single files/send multiple files. Received files are automatically saved to the appropriate location by file type.
Transfer All	Receive/send all files by function at once.

- Most received files are saved to the appropriate location by file type, however, some may be saved to *Other documents* in Data Folder.
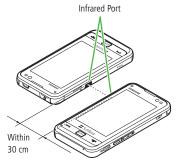
Infrared

Exchange files wirelessly with infrared-compatible handsets, PCs or other devices.

Getting Started

- 930SC Infrared is based on IrMC1.1. Transmission may be unavailable for some functions, even when IrMC1.1 is supported on the other party's handset.
- Infrared data transmission is unavailable while sending/receiving message or using Internet.
- Calling or sending mail is unavailable during Infrared transmissions.
- Transmissions may be inhibited in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared devices.

- Authorization Code is the 4-digit password used to allow transmissions between infrared devices. Enter same Authorization Code on both devices when transmitting all files at once.

Infrared Precautions

- Place devices within 30 cm. Align device ports. Do not place objects in between devices.

Infrared Port

Within 30 cm

- Maintain port alignment until transmission ends.
- A soiled port may inhibit transmission. Clean port with a soft cloth beforehand.
- If transmission fails, a confirmation appears. Review precautions, choose *Yes* to try again.

Infrared Data Transmission

Send and receive Phonebook or Calendar entries, Account details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, music files, and others.
Send either all Phonebook entries, Calendar or Bookmarks in a single transfer.

Note

- Infrared is unavailable while Internet services/Media Player is in use, or while editing mail/files.
- Some received files cannot be saved on 930SC.

Sending Data

First, activate Infrared on the other device.

1 **Send data**

■ **To send from Data Folder, Calendar, Schedule or Bookmarks**
In list, tap More → *Send* → *Via infrared* → Select data → Tap Send

■ **To send from Phonebook or Tasks**
In list, tap Send → *Via infrared* → Select data → Tap Send

- Some functions allow sending from Details/ Playback window.

Receiving One by One

1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Infrared* → Under *On/Off, On***

- If Bluetooth® is active, cancellation confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Infrared.
- 930SC is ready to receive data.

2 **Begin sending from other device within 3 minutes**

3 **Cancel Calling confirmation appears, choose *Yes***

4 **Save confirmation appears, choose *Yes***

- To save pictograms, choose *Pictures* or *My Pictogram*.
- Tap Cancel to cancel receiving.
- Press [📞] to terminate data reception.

- If vCard contains incoming image over 100KB, 930SC deletes the image then saves in Phonebook.

Note

- **Receive files in Standby. Files cannot be received when Auto Lock is active, All Keys locked or during Software Update.**

Transferring All

1 **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Infrared* → *Transfer all***

2 **Enter Phone Password → Tap OK**

3 ***Phonebook, Calendar,* or *Bookmarks***

- For *Phonebook*, choose *Yes* to transfer images.

4 **Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) → Tap OK**

Receiving All

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Infrared* → **Under** *On/Off, On*

- If *Bluetooth* is set to *On*, confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to start infrared transmission.
- 930SC is ready to receive files.

2 Begin sending from other device within 3 minutes

3 No Calling confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

4 Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) → Tap OK

- Enter same Authorization Code as sender.

5 Select a saving method

■ **To add files as new entries**
Add New

■ **To overwrite current entries**
Overwrite → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

- Receiving all entries deletes existing 930SC entries except Account details. Receiving Account details deletes existing Account details except handset phone number.

- Tap Cancel to cancel receiving.
- Press 🔟 to terminate reception.

Advanced

⚙ Settings

- Activate or cancel Infrared transmission (☞P.13-25)
- Transfer Phonebook or Calendar entries, and Bookmarks at once (☞P.13-25)

Bluetooth®

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible handsets or other devices to exchange files wirelessly, or handsfree devices for handsfree calling. Connect 930SC to PCs and other devices for Internet access, etc.

Getting Started

Bluetooth® transmissions require Bluetooth®-compatible devices with the same profiles.
See 930SC Bluetooth® specifications below:

Item	Specification
Communication Standard	Bluetooth® Standard Ver. 2.0
Applicable Profiles	Headset
	Hands-Free
	Serial Port
	Dialup Networking
	File Transfer
	Object Push
	Advanced Audio Distribute
	Audio/Video Remote Control
	Basic Imaging[1]
	Basic Printing
	Generic Access Profile
	Service Discovery Protocol
	Generic Object Exchange Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class1

Item	Specification
Communication Distance[2]	Within approximately 20 m
Frequency Band Used	2.4 GHz
Bluetooth® QD ID	B014386

1 930SC only supports printing-related equipments.
2 Varies by radio interference and other conditions.

Bluetooth® Precautions

- 930SC may not work with all Bluetooth® devices.
- File transfers may not be available with some Bluetooth® devices. Operations, displays or actions vary by device, even if device meets Bluetooth® standards by interference.
- The 2.4 GHz band used by Bluetooth® devices is shared with other devices. Transmission rate or distance may be reduced, or transmissions terminated.
- Use of handsfree devices may create noise depending on connected devices or the usage environment.
- 930SC cannot be connected to other devices when connected to Bluetooth® headphones while playing media files.
- USB and Bluetooth® cannot be used simultaneously.
- Deactivate Bluetooth® before connecting USB Cable.

Bluetooth® Data Transmission

Send and receive Phonebook or Calendar entries, Account details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, music files, and others.
Send either all Phonebook entries, Calendar or Bookmarks in a single transfer.

Toggling Bluetooth®

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth***

2. **Tap On or Off**
   - If Infrared is active, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to activate Bluetooth®.

- If Bluetooth® is active, 🚯 appears at the top of Display. Transfer data or connect compatible devices.

Searching for Bluetooth® Devices

Save Bluetooth® devices to Paired devices list. Up to 10 can be saved. Enter same Authorization Code on both 930SC and device.
Activate Bluetooth® on device beforehand.

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth***

2. **Tap Search new devices**
   - If Bluetooth® is *Off*, choose *Yes*.

3. **Detected devices are listed, drag device to *930SC* icon**

4. **Enter Authorization Code (4 to 16 digits) → Tap OK**

5. **Enter same Authorization Code on device within 30 seconds**
   - After the target device is connected to the handset, look up or get the data stored in that device.

- Authorization Code is a 4- to 16-digit password required for transmissions between Bluetooth® devices. When connecting to a handsfree device, enter specified Authorization Code. Authorization Code entry is not required for registered devices.
- If authorization fails, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and repeat from step ❹.
- If 10 paired devices are already registered, oldest is deleted to make room for the new one. If all are authenticated, memory full confirmation appears.
- Paired Devices Indicators
  - 🖳 : Personal Computer 📱 : Mobile Phone
  - 🎛 : Others 🖨 : Printer
  - 🎧 : Handsfree Device/Headset
- If a Bluetooth® connection request appears, choose *Yes* and enter specified Authorization Code within 30 seconds. For paired devices, choose *Yes* to establish connection without Authorization Code.

Browsing Connected Device Files

Access connected device's shared folders or files. Import or delete files from the other device.

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth***

2. **Tap the registered device's icon → *Browse device***

3. **Approve access on source device**

Sending

1. **Select file and send**

   ■ **From Data Folder, Calendar, Schedule or Bookmarks**
   In list, tap More → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth* → Select entries → Tap Send → Transfer confirmation appears, tap *Yes*

   ■ **From Phonebook or Tasks**
   In list, tap Send → *Via Bluetooth* → Select entry → Tap Send → Transfer confirmation appears, tap *Yes*

2. **Drag destination device to *930SC* icon**
   - Receiver accepts and transfer begins.
   - If device is not registered, register it first.

- Some functions allow sending option from Details or Playback window.

Receiving One by One

After sender approves connection, file transfer begins and received file is saved.

1. **Transfer confirmation appears, choose *Yes***

2. **Received confirmation appears, choose *Yes***
   - Save received pictogram files to *Pictures* or *My Pictograms*.

- Received folders are saved to *Other documents*.
- If vCard contains incoming image over 100KB, 930SC deletes the image then save in Phonebook.

Transferring All

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → **Tap Transfer all**

2 Drag destination device to *930SC* icon → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

● If device is not registered, register it first.

3 *Phonebook, Calendar, or Bookmark*

● When Phonebook is selected to transfer image data, choose *Yes*.

Receiving All

1 Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → **Tap On**

● If *Via infrared* is set to *On*, confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to start Bluetooth® transmission.
● 930SC is set in Standby mode to receive data. Begin sending files from other device.

2 Connection confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

3 Select a saving method

■ **To add new data**
Add

■ **To delete all to overwrite data**
Overwrite → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

● When receiving phonebook entries, all entries except Account details are deleted. When receiving Account details, all data except the phone number is overwritten.
● Tap Cancel to cancel the reception.
● Press 🔲 to terminate data reception.

A/V Headset

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones to listen to music.

1 Activate Media Player

2 Tap To headset

3 Drag device to connect to *930SC* icon

● When no device is registered, search and register new device.

● To switch output from headsets to 930SC, tap Transfer to Phone.

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.12-12

● Deleting Data on Connected Device
● Searching Devices by Type

🔧 Settings

● Activate or cancel Bluetooth® functions (☞P.13-24)
● Search for a new Bluetooth® device (☞P.13-24)
● Transfer all Phonebook or Calendar entries, or Bookmarks at once (☞P.13-24)
● Edit 930SC name (☞P.13-24)
● Confirm 930SC device address (☞P.13-24)
● Search/save from Bluetooth® devices (☞P.13-24)
● Set Secure mode (☞P.13-24)
● Adjust Handsfree setting (☞P.13-24)
● Set Answering mode (☞P.13-24)
● Confirm available Bluetooth® functions (☞P.13-24)

USB Connection

Connect 930SC to a PC to transfer files between devices. Connect printer to print still images. 930SC supports USB 2.0.

Getting Started

Install Samsung PC Studio and USB driver first. For installation instructions, PC operating environment, etc., access SAMSUNG website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/930download.html).

Connecting to a PC

The following operations are available:

● Transfer 930SC Data Folder files to PC
● Import PC files and save to Data Folder
● Perform Packet Communications

Note

● **To access to the Internet through PC or PDA connection (Mobile data communication), a large volume of packet communication is required in short period that will apply for high packet communication charge. Please pay attention on communication fee when using mobile data communication.**

Memory Card Backup

Back up Phonebook entries, etc. to Memory Card (Package backup). Restore backed up items as required (Package restoration).

● Restore from Backup in case of accidental data loss.
● Backups are saved by type (transfer date is file name).
● Available Backup types
  -Phonebook
  -Calendar
  -Tasks
  -Content Key
  -Bookmarks

● Use Backup to save files, share information between Memory Card-compatible handsets, or move files to a newly purchased handset.

Backup Precautions

● Not available when battery is low.
● During backup or restoration, handset transmissions are not possible.
● Some files cannot be backed up. Some backed up files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
● Backup may fail if 930SC/Memory Card memory is too low.

- 930SC holds up to 200 Calendar/Tasks entries. When 200 entries are restored from Memory Card, a confirmation appears and excess is not saved.
- Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser bookmarks are backed up.
- If a backed up bookmark is too large it may not be restorable.
- Some images set to Phonebook entries may not be transferred because of size.
- Backup data saved on Memory Card is not accessible on 930SC until restored from Memory Card.
- When backing up Content Keys, note the following:
  - Backup file can hold only one Content Key at a time. To backup another Content Key, a confirmation appears and the previous backup file is overwritten (To keep the previously backed up files, restore the Content Key to 930SC from Memory Card and then perform backup again).
  - Backing up a file containing a Content Key to Memory Card moves Content Key from 930SC to Memory Card making the file inaccessible.
  - Restoring a file with a Content Key to 930SC adds the Content Key to 930SC without overwriting any existing Content Keys on 930SC.

Backing Up to Memory Card

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card***

2. **Tap Backup**

3. ***Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK**

4. ***Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys,* or *Bookmarks***

5. **Confirmation appears, choose *Yes***
   - Tap Cancel to cancel backup.
   - If *Content key* backup file already exists, an overwrite confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to overwrite the file.

Loading from Memory Card

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card***

2. **Tap Restore**

3. ***Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK**

4. ***Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys,* or *Bookmarks***

5. **Select a file**
   - To delete a backup file, tap Delete → Check a file to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*

6. ***Add* or *Overwrite***
   - Tap Cancel to cancel restoration.

Advanced

⚙ Settings
- Backup Memory (☞P.13-26)
- Restore Memory (☞P.13-26)

Connectivity & File Backup

12

12-9

Mass Storage

Connect 930SC, Memory Card inserted, to a PC via USB Cable to manage Memory Card files on the PC.

Connecting to a PC

1. **Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *USB mode* → *Mass storage* → *Yes***

2. **Enter Phone Password → Tap OK**

3. **Connect 930SC to PC via USB Cable**

4. **Use PC to access Memory Card files**

- Mass Storage is unavailable while receiving S! Mail, using Samsung PC Studio, or when *My status* in S! Friend's Status is *Online*.
- Calling and Messaging are unavailable in Mass Storage.

Removing Device

1. **On PC, perform device removal**

2. **In Mass storage, tap Exit**

3. **Disconnect USB Cable**

Note

- **Never disconnect USB Cable before disconnecting operation of device from PC.**

Advanced

🔧 **Settings**

- Activate Mass Storage (☞P.13-25)
- Activate MTP Sync Mode (☞P.13-25)

S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)

Back up 930SC Phonebook entries on Server or synchronize 930SC Phonebook entries with SAB. Restore lost 930SC Phonebook entries from SAB.

- SAB use requires a separate subscription.
- If you should change handsets, select an SAB compatible handset to take over SAB entries.

Note

- **Packet Communication charges apply to connections between 930SC and SAB (Backup, Restore, or Synchronize).**

SAB Precautions

- These items cannot be synchronized with SAB; using Restore for these items will delete them from 930SC:
  - Picture
  - Ringtone settings, Vibration settings (Voice Call, Video Call, Messages, or S! Friend's Status)
  - Blood type
  - Hobby
- Select back up/restore timing and sync mode carefully to avoid accidental deletion of entries.
  - Delete all 930SC entries then select *Synchronize*, *Sync from client*, or *Backup* to delete all SAB entries.
  - Delete all SAB entries then select *Synchronize*, *Sync from server*, or *Restore* to delete all 930SC entries.
- If number of entry items savable on handset varies from SAB, synchronization will reflect lower number.
- Post handset change service continues as follows:

Content		Detail
SoftBank 3G Handsets		
	SAB Supported	SAB entries remain.
	SAB Not Supported	SAB service usable and entries remain; handset access unavailable but PC access available.

Content	Detail
V3, V4, V5, V6, V8 Series	
	SAB service is automatically canceled and SAB entries are deleted.

- When SAB service is cancelled, Phonebook entries on Server are deleted.

Synchronization Modes

Available synchronization modes are as follows.

Sync Mode	Description
Synchronize	Backs up 930SC entries and updates SAB.[1]
Sync from client	Backs up updated 930SC entries.[2]
Sync from server	Downloads updated SAB entries to 930SC.[3]
Backup	Deletes SAB entries and uploads 930SC entries.[4]
Restore	Deletes all 930SC entries and downloads SAB entries to 930SC (up to 930SC limit) last edited first.[5]

1 If 930SC Phonebook entry and SAB entry item are both updated, SAB entry item takes priority.
2 Phonebook update information on Server is not applied to the one on 930SC.
3 Phonebook update information of 930SC is not applied to the one on Server.

4 Be careful that all Phonebook entries on Server is deleted.
5 Be careful that all Phonebook entries of 930SC is deleted.

- *Slow sync* is performed regardless of Sync mode setting when using SAB for the first time or the last synch was not completed correctly by canceling, etc., *Slow sync* works as the same with *Synchronize*. View Sync type in Sync log to see if *Slow sync* was performed.

Synchronizing Phonebook

Connect to Phonebook managed on Server and synchronize it with 930SC Phonebook entries.

1. Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *S! Addressbook Back-up* → *Start sync*

2. Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

3. *Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Back up,* or *Restore* → *Yes* → *OK*

Note

● **Starting synch connect to network. Packet Communication charges apply. Network connection is automatically disconnected when the synchronization ends.**

Synchronizing Phonebook Automatically

Setting *Auto sync settings* to *On* requires Set frequency and Sync mode settings.

Setting Auto Sync

1 Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *S! Addressbook Back-up* → *Auto sync settings* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK

2 Under *On/Off*, *On* or *Off*

3 *Sync mode*

4 *Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Back up,* or *Restore*

5 *Set frequency*

6 Set items

■ **To back up once a month**
From pulldown menu, *Every month* → Tap Time field → Enter time → Tap Date field → Enter date

■ **To back up once a week**
From pulldown menu, *Every week* → Tap Time field → Enter time → Tap Day of week → Enter a day of week

■ **To back up 10 minutes after editing Phonebook entries**
From pulldown menu, *Every editing*

7 Tap Save

Advanced

🔧 Advanced Settings ☞P.12-13
● Deleting S! Addressbook Back-up History

🔧 Advanced Settings

Bluetooth® Settings

Disconnecting Currently Connected Device
Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → Tap registered device indicator → *Disconnect*

Acquiring Connected Device Data
Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → Tap registered device indicator → *Browse device* → Approve access on source device

■ **To acquire a file**
Select a save location → Select a file to get

■ **To acquire multiple sub-folders or files**
Select a save location → Tap Get → *Folder* or *File* → Check a file to get → Tap Get

■ **To acquire a folder**
Tap Get → *Folder* → Select a folder to get

Deleting Data on Connected Device
Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → Tap registered device indicator → *Browse device* → Approve access on source device → Select a folder → Tap Delete → Check a folder to delete → Tap Delete → Approve access on source device

Viewing Paired Device Details

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* →
Bluetooth → Tap a device indicator to view →
Device details

Editing Name of Paired Device

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* →
Bluetooth → Tap a device indicator to edit →
Rename → Edit device name

Authorizing Paired Device

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* →
Bluetooth → Tap a device indicator to authorize →
Authorize device or *Unauthorize device*
- When *Authorize device* is set, the setting turns to
  Unauthorized device.

Deleting Connected Device

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* →
Bluetooth → Tap a device indicator to delete →
Delete → *Yes*

Searching Devices by Type

Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* →
Bluetooth → Tap More → *Search settings* → Select
an item
- When selecting *Device address*, Enter an address.

S! Addressbook Back-up

Viewing S! Addressbook Back-up History

Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *S! Addressbook*
Back-up → *Sync log* → Select a log

Deleting S! Addressbook Back-up History

Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *S! Addressbook*
Back-up → *Sync log* → Tap Delete → Check logs to
delete → Tap Delete

Connectivity & File Backup

12

12-13

Handset Customization

13

Settings

Messaging Settings

Custom Mail Address

Customize or change handset mail address	Tap Messaging → *Settings* → *Custom mail address* → Follow onscreen instructions
	• Change mail account name (alphanumerics before @). Random alphanumerics set by default.

S! Mail & SMS	**Start Here** Tap Messaging → *Settings* → *Universal settings*	
Change font size	**Default** Standard	*Font size* → Select an item
Change scroll unit	**Default** Single line	*Scroll unit* → Select an item
Show or hide Navigation Bar	**Default** Show	*Navigation bar* → Select an item
Request or cancel Delivery Report	**Default** Off	Under *Delivery report*, *On* or *Off*
		• *On*: Receive a message confirming successful delivery of a sent message.
Insert or hide Signature	**Default** Off	*Signature* → *Auto insert* → Select an item
Edit Signature		*Signature* → *Signature texts* → Enter a signature
Set or cancel Auto Delete for received messages when Received memory is full	**Default** On (Auto delete)	*Auto delete* → *Received msg.* → Select an item
		On (Auto delete): Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room for new ones. If *Auto delete* is *Off*, memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
		Off: Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full	**Default** On (Auto delete)	*Auto delete* → *Sent msg.* → Select an item
		On (Auto delete): Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room for new ones. If *Auto delete* is *Off* or Unsent is full, memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
		Off: Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.
Show or hide transmission progress bar	**Default** Show	*Sending progress settings* → *Sending progress* → Select an item

Handset Customization

13

Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden)	*Sending progress settings* → *Sending result notice* → Select an item
	● *Sending result notice* is only selectable when *Sending progress* is set to *Do not show*.
Set received message notice content or hide notice **Default** From	*Message notice* → *View setting* → Select an item
	● Received message notice scrolls above active function windows.
Select secret folder message notice setting **Default** Show	*Message notice* → *Secret folder* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Secret folder* → Select an item
	● *Not show*: Incoming message notice window for messages sorted to secret folders or *Message notice* does not appear.
Change received message view **Default** Folder view	*Received msg. view* → Select an item
Change sent message view **Default** Folder view	*Sent msg. view* → Select an item
Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting **Default** Always	*3D Pictogram* → *3D Picto. Auto play* → Select an item
	Always: Show 3D Pictogram for all messages
	Only unread: Show 3D Pictogram for unread messages only
	Disable: Hide 3D Pictogram
	● The first time a received message is viewed *3D Picto. Auto play* confirmation appears.
Select 3D Pictogram color settings **Default** Random	*3D Pictogram* → *Color settings* → ◀ or ▶ to show target pattern → Tap OK
Select 3D Pictogram display speed **Default** Standard	*3D Pictogram* → *Display speed* → Select an item

S! Mail   **Start Here** Tap Messaging → *Settings* → *S! Mail settings*

Set message sending priority **Default** Normal	*Sending options* → *Priority* →Select an item
Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry **Default** Maximum	*Sending options* → *Expiry time* → Select an item
	● When the expiry time has elapsed, S! Mails are automatically deleted from Mail Server.
Set time to send a message via Mail Service Center **Default** Immediately	*Sending options* → *Delivery time* → Select an item
	● When set time has elapsed, Mail Service Center sends S! Mail message.

Set S! Mail receiving options `Default` Auto download	*Receiving options* → *Home auto settings* → Select an item *Auto download*: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically *From number only*: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail sent to handset number *Manual retrieval*: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message
Set S! Mail receiving options during roaming `Default` Auto download	*Receiving options* → *Roaming auto settings* → Select an item *Auto download*: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically *Manual retrieval*: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message ●When you set *Auto download*, an entire message including any attachments will be automatically downloaded, resulting in high Packet Communication charges for your messaging overseas.
Select reply setting `Default` Off	Under *Reply settings*, *On* or *Off* *On*: Replies to sent messages are automatically addressed to *"Reply to" address* *Off*: Replies to sent messages are addressed to 930SC number/mail address ●Set address that appears in To: field of replies to messages sent from 930SC.
Set "reply to" address	*"Reply to" address* → Enter an item → Enter address
Link External Light to incoming Feeling Mail `Default` On	*Link to feeling* → *Light color* → Under *On/Off*, *On* or *Off*
Link External Light color to incoming Feeling Mail `Default` Happy/Glad: Pink, OK/Good: Green, Sad/Sorry: Blue, NG/Bad: Light Blue, Important/Notice: Yellow	*Link to feeling* → *Light color* → *Light color* → Select a feeling → Select a color ●Tap ▶ to view color.
Link Vibration to incoming Feeling Mail `Default` On	*Link to feeling* → *Vibration pattern* → Select an item
Set whether to sound 930SC when Feeling Mail arrives `Default` Off	*Link to feeling* → *Ringtone* → Under *On/Off*, *On* or *Off*
Linking Ringtone to incoming Feeling Mail `Default` Happy/Glad: One Fine Day.mp4, OK/Good: Sunny Day.mp4, Bad/Sorry: Jazzy House_Pleasure.mp4, NG/Bad: Minimal Tone.mp4, Important/Notice: On my way home.mp4	*Link to feeling* → *Ringtone* → *Assign tone* → Select a feeling → Select a save location → Select a Ringtone ●Tap ▶ to playback the file.
Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration	*Link to feeling* → *Ringtone* → *Duration* → Enter time
Set attached image appearance `Default` Double-sized	*Picture appearance* → Select an item

Set attached image auto playback	Default On	*Auto play file* → Under *Picture, On* or *Off*
Set attached sound auto playback	Default Off	*Auto play file* → Under *Sound, On* or *Off*

SMS		**Start Here** Tap Messaging → *Settings* → *SMS settings*
Set Mail Service Center message expiry time	Default None	*Expiry time* → Select an item • Upon expiry Mail Service Center SMS messages are automatically deleted.
Set Message Center Number	Default Setting 1 +819066519300	*Message center* → Select an item → Edit Message center number
Change character code	Default Unicode	*Char-code* → Select an item

Handset Customization

13

13-5

Internet Settings

Yahoo! Keitai		**Start Here** Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *Yahoo! Keitai browser settings*
Change page font size	**Default** Standard	*Font size* → Select an item
Set page scroll unit	**Default** Single line	*Scroll unit* → Select an item
Show or hide page images	**Default** On	*Downloads* → Under *Display image, On* or *Off* • Select *Off* to help reduce download time.
Play or mute page sounds	**Default** On	*Downloads* → Under *Play sounds, On* or *Off* • Select *Off* to help reduce download time.
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates		*Memory manager* → Select an item → *Yes*
Show or hide Manufacture Number	**Default** On	*Security* → Under *Manufacture number, On* or *Off* • *On*: 930SC automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send or hide Referer	**Default** Send	*Security* → *Send referer* → Select an item
Select Cookie setting	**Default** Enabled	*Security* → *Cookies* → Select an item
Select Script setting	**Default** Ask NW access	*Security* → *Script* → Select an item
Confirm Root Certificate		*Security* → *Root certificates* → Select a certificate
Set Certificate retention period	**Default** Per browsing	*Security* → *Certificate retention* → Select an item
Initialize Browser		*Initialized browser* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*
Reset settings		*Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

Handset Customization

13

13-6

PC Site Browser   **Start Here** Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai → *PC site browser* → *PC site browser settings*

Change page font size **Default** Standard	*Font size* → Select an item
Set Page navigation show or hide when zoom **Default** On	Under *Page navigation*, *On* or *Off*
Show or hide page images **Default** On	*Downloads* → Under *Display image*, *On* or *Off* ● Select *Off* to help reduce download time.
Play or mute page sounds **Default** On	*Downloads* → Under *Play sounds*, *On* or *Off* ● Select *Off* to help reduce download time.
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates	*Memory manager* → Select an item → *Yes*
Show or hide Manufacture Number **Default** On	*Security* → Under *Manufacture number*, *On* or *Off* ● *On*: 930SC automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send or hide Referer **Default** Send	*Security* → *Send referer* → Select an item
Select Cookie setting **Default** Enabled	*Security* → *Cookies* → Select an item
Select Script setting **Default** On	*Security* → *Script* → Select an item
Confirm Root Certificate	*Security* → *Root certificates* → Select a certificate
Set Certificate retention period **Default** Per browsing	*Security* → *Certificate retention* → Select an item
Show or hide warning **Default** Activate PC site browser: On, Switch to Yahoo! Keitai: On	*Warning messages* → Under *Activate PC site browser* or *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai*, *On* or *Off* ● Show or hide PC Site Browser activation, or Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser switching warning.
Initialize Browser	*Initialized browser* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*
Reset settings	*Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*

S! Information Channel	**Start Here** Tap Menu → *Entertainment* → *S! Information Channel/Weather Indicator* → *Weather indicator* → *Settings*

Set Weather Indicator update notification	**Default** On	Under *Weather notification*, *On* or *Off*
Set Weather Indicator automatic update	**Default** On	Under *Icon update*, *On* or *Off*

Media Player Settings

Music	**Start Here** Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Settings* → *Music*

Set Repeat mode	**Default** All	*Repeat mode* → Select an item • Play a single track repeatedly, all music, or all files in playlist randomly or repeatedly.
Set Equalizer	**Default** Off	*Equalizer* → Select an item • Set *Equalizer* only when using Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth® headphones.
Set 3D sound	**Default** Off	Under *3D sound*, *On* or *Off* • Set *3D sound* only when using Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth® headphones.

Movie	**Start Here** Tap Menu → *Media Player* → *Settings* → *Movie*

Set Repeat mode	**Default** All	*Repeat mode* → Select an item • Play a single file repeatedly, all videos, or all files in playlist randomly or repeatedly.
Set Backlight	**Default** Always On	*Backlight* → Select an item
Set Vertical View Size	**Default** 480 ＊ 360	*Vertical view size* → Select an item
Set Horizontal View Size	**Default** Full screen (Normal)	*Horizontal view size* → Select an item
Show or hide Video thumbnails	**Default** On	Under *Thumbnail display*, *On* or *Off*
Access or ignore linked information	**Default** On	Under *Web link*, *On* or *Off* • *On*: After playing a file with linked info, access confirmation appears.

Handset Customization

13

13-8

Mobile Camera Settings

Camera & Video

`Start Here` ⬜ (2+ seconds) → 🔧 → *General* tab

Set Anti-Shake	`Default` Off	Under *Anti-Shake*, *On* or *Off* • Anti-Shake is not available when Wide Dynamic Range is set to *On*.
Activate or cancel Auto Focus	`Default` On	*Auto focus* → Select an item • When *On (Face focus)* is set, the handset automatically recognizes a face and focuses on it. Up to 11 persons can be recognized at once. When the handset recognizes a face, a yellow frame (gray frames for any successive recognitions) appears. • *On (Face focus)* is only available for normal shots. In addition, the face focus function is automatically enabled when Auto focus is set to *On*.
Activate or cancel Auto Save	`Default` Off	Under *Auto Save*, *On* or *Off* • *On*: Images or video is automatically saved after capturing or recording.
Set Contrast	`Default` 0	*Contrast* → Select an item
Set Saturation	`Default` 0	*Saturation* → Select an item
Set Sharpness	`Default` 0	*Sharpness* → Select an item

Photo

`Start Here` ⬜ (2+ seconds) → 🔧 → *Photo* tab

Select Quality	`Default` Normal	*Quality* → Select an item
Set ISO	`Default` Auto	*ISO* → Select an item
Set Exposure metering	`Default` Normal	*Exposure metering* → Select an item
Set Wide Dynamic Range	`Default` Off	Under *Wide dynamic range*, *On* or *Off* • Setting this to *On* automatically adjusts your photo taken in a backlight situation or environment where the brightness difference is extreme that would otherwise be too bright or too dark. • Wide Dynamic Range is not available when Anti-Shake is set to *On*.

Set save location when Memory Card is inserted **Default** Phone	*Save to* → Select an item ● When image size is set to *Mail* or *Wide S*, *Digital camera* is unselectable. ● This setting is active with Memory Card inserted. ● If Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to *Phone*.	
Show or hide Guideline **Default** Off	Under *Guideline*, *On* or *Off*	
Set Face link Display **Default** Off	Under *Face link display*, *On* or *Off* ● When you set this *On*, after the face you captured is recognized, the name linked to Face Link appears.	
Set Shutter sound **Default** Pattern1	*Shutter sound* → Select an item	

Video   **Start Here** ⬭ (2+ seconds) → 📷 → *Video* tab

Select Quality **Default** Economy	*Quality* → Select an item
Set save location **Default** Phone	Under *Save to*, *Phone* or *Memory card* ● When Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to 930SC.
Show or hide Guideline **Default** Off	Under *Guideline*, *On* or *Off*

Digital TV Settings

TV Alarm		**Start Here** Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings* → *TV alarm*
Set alert tone	Default Samsung Tune.mp4	*Alert tone* → Select a save location → Select a file ● Tap ▶ to playback.
Set volume	Default Level 3	Adjust volume on Volume field
Set vibration	Default Pattern 1	*Vibration* → Select an item
Set notification light	Default On	Under *Light*, *On* or *Off*
Set reminder time	Default 1 minute before	*Reminder time* → Select an item
Set alarm duration	Default 10 secs	*Duration* → Select an item

Data Broadcast		**Start Here** Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings* → *Set broadcast data*
Set recording type	Default Image + Text	*Set recording* → Select an item
Select save location	Default Phone	*Image location* → Select an item
Select connection notification type	Default Ask each time	*Notify connection* → Select an item
Show or hide Manufacture Number	Default Off	Under *Manufacture number*, *On* or *Off*
Delete station data		*Delete station data* → Select a broadcasting network as required → Tap Delete → 🗑 → *Yes* ● To delete all stations, tap Delete all → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*.

Display and Sound		**Start Here** Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings*
Set whether to show indicator icons at the top of the screen in the Landscape view	Default On	*Display* → Under *Display pict*, *On* or *Off*
Set whether to display 4:3 videos in the Landscape view	Default Normal	*Display* → *Landscape style* → Select an item
Set whether to display 4:3 videos in the Portrait view	Default Normal	*Display* → *Portrait style* → Select an item

Handset Customization

13

Adjust display brightness	Default Level 3	*Display* → Adjust brightness on setting field
		• This setting is only effective when the backlight brightness is set to *Manual*.
Adjust sound quality	Default Normal	*Sound* → *Sound mode* → Select an item
Select language	Default Main	*Sound* → *Sound language* → Select an item
Select output device	Default Earphone	*Sound* → *Sound output* → Select an item

Recording

Set Save Location	Default Memory card	Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings* → *Recording* → *Save to* → Select an item

Incoming Calls & Alarms

Handle Incoming Calls & Alarms Default Voice call/Video call: Call priority, Alarms: Alarm priority	Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings* → *Calls & Alarms* → Select an item → Select action
	• When *Call priority* or *Alarm priority* is set, incoming call window or alarm window appears (TV reception paused).
	• When *Notice a call* or *Alarm notice* is set, a notification appears on top of Display and handset vibrates (TV reception continues). Press ⌁ to accept a call; press ⌁ to hold a call.

Auto Power Off

End TV after set duration	Default Off	Tap Menu → *TV* → *Settings* → *Auto power off* → *Auto power off* → Select an item

Phonebook Settings [Start Here] Tap Menu → *Phonebook* → *Settings*

Select Phonebook Save Location	Default Phone	*Save setting* → Select an item
		• *Ask each time*: A confirmation appears each time a new entry is saved.
Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM)	Default Phone	*Change view* → Select an item
Change Search Method	Default ABC	*Search method* → Select an item
Backup Phonebook entries		*Backup* → *Copy all to USIM* or *Copy all from USIM* → *Yes*

Sounds & Alerts Settings [Start Here] Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Sounds settings*

Adjust volume [Default] Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/Missed call notification/S! Quick News/Delivery Report/System sounds: Level 3, S! Quick News: Level 0	*Volume* → Adjust volume
Set Ringtone for Voice Call/Video Call [Default] Voice call: Young hopefuls, Video call: Samsung Tune.mp4	*Ringtone* → *Voice call*, or *Video call* → Select save location for a file → Select a file ● Tap ▶ to playback.
Set ringtone other than Voice Call [Default] A Toy Box.mp4	*Ringtone* → Tap a Ringtone field to set → Select save location for a file → Select a file ● Tap ▶ to playback.
Set ringtone duration other than Voice Call [Default] 5 Seconds	*Ringtone* → Tap a duration → Enter duration
Set Vibration [Default] Off	*Vibration* → Select an item → Select a pattern ● Tap ▶ to view a pattern.
Set Touch panel tone volume level and vibration level for operating the touch panel [Default] Volume: Level 0, Touch vibration: Level 3	*Operation feedback* → Adjust volume/Set strength of vibration
Set system sounds [Default] Popup box alerts/Call end tone/Alert on call: On, Minute minder/Call connect tone/Power on/ Power off: Off	*System sounds* → Check an item to Check → Tap Save
Set External Light color for incoming transmissions [Default] Voice call/Video call/Message/S! Friend's Status/Missed call notification: On, S! Quick News: Off	*Incoming light* → Select an item → Select a Color ● When selecting *Off*, Notification light does not blink. ● Tap ▶ to blink a light.
Set External Light color for missed calls [Default] Missed call/Missed call notification: Blue, Message/Delivery report: Green, S! Friend's Status: Light Blue, Answering Machine: White, Missed alarm: Pink	*Notification light* → Select an item → Select a color ● When selecting *Off*, Notification light does not blink. ● Tap ▶ to view color.

Display Settings Start Here Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Display settings*

Change Wallpaper **Default** Preset pictures	*Wallpaper* → (●P.2-4 Wallpaper ❷)
Set Frequently Used Functions to Widget Bar **Default** 17 Widgets (Digital Clock, Analog Clock, Dual Clock, Weather Indicator, Wallpaper Setting, Calendar, Alarm, S! Friend's Status, S! Quick News, Oekaki anime, Photo Album, Camera, TV, Music Player, Dice, Phonebook, Y!keitai Bookmarks)	*Widget setting* → Check an item to set → Tap Set ● To restore the default, tap Default set. ● Up to 17 Widgets can be set. Check at least one to set Widget in Widget Bar.
Set Font type **Default** Font 1	*Font type* → Select an item
Change Message text font size **Default** Standard	*Font size* → *Messages* → Select an item
Set text size in Yahoo! Keitai pages **Default** Standard	*Font size* → *Yahoo! Keitai* → Select an item
Set text size in PC site browser **Default** Standard	*Font size* → *PC site browser* → Select an item
Adjust Display brightness **Default** Auto	*Backlight* → *Brightness* → Under *Auto/Manual*, *Auto* or *Manual* ● When *Manual* is selected, adjust brightness on Level field.
Set Backlight time **Default** On: 15 seconds, Dim: 15 seconds	*Backlight* → *Illumination time* → Select an item → *Dimmer time* → Select an item ● When Backlight time is set to *Off*, Display becomes dim. ● Display becomes dimmer when Backlight time elapses and turns off when Dim time elapses.
Set Operator name **Default** Off	Under *Operator name*, *On* or *Off*

Phone Settings Start Here Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Phone settings*

Change user interface language **Default** 日本語	*Language* → Select an item
Set Time zone updating **Default** Prompt first	*Date & Time* → *Set Date & Time* → *Time zone updating* → Select an item → Tap Save • *Auto*: A confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to restart 930SC. • *Time zone updating* is disabled even when the setting is changed.
Set time	*Date & Time* → *Set Date & Time* → *Time* → Enter time → Tap Save • Some functions are disabled when time is not set.
Set date	*Date & Time* → *Set Date & Time* → *Date* → Enter date → Tap Save • Some functions are disabled until date is set.
Change Home time zone **Default** GMT+09:00	*Date & Time* → *Set Date & Time* → *Home zone* → Scroll a window and tap a target city → Tap Save → Tap Save • Alternatively, tap the tab located at the top of the window to change the zone. • Select the zone closest to your locality. Complete this setting before selecting *Dual Clock* in Widget setting.
Activate or cancel Daylight savings time adjustment **Default** ▢	*Date & Time* → *Set Date & Time* → *Home zone* → Scroll a window and tap a target city → ▢ → Tap Save → Tap Save • When daylight saving time is set, ▢ appears.
Change Date format **Default** YYYY/MM/DD	*Date & Time* → *Date format* → Select an item
Change Time format **Default** 24H	*Date & Time* → *Time format* → Select an item
Set Time correction **Default** On	*Date & Time* → *Time correction* → Under *Auto correction*, *On* or *Off* • To specify when to correct the time, tap *Correction timing* → Check an item to set → Tap Save. • Tapping *Manual correction* immediately corrects the time.
Set Auto Lock **Default** On	Under *Auto lock*, *On* or *Off*
Save entries to User's Dictionary	*User's dictionary* → *Edit dictionary* → Tap New entry → Tap Word field → Enter word and sentence → Tap Reading field → Enter reading → Tap Save

Edit User's Dictionary entries	*User's dictionary* → *Edit dictionary* → Select entry to edit → Edit word and reading → Tap Save
Delete User's Dictionary entries	*User's dictionary* → *Edit dictionary* → Tap *Delete* → Check word to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*
Reset entry history to default	*User's dictionary* → *Reset learning* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes* • Previous Kanji conversions appear first for predicted/conversion alternatives. This action clears conversion history.
Activate or cancel Simple Search Default Off	Under *Simple search*, *On* or *Off* • *On*: In Standby, press keys assigned to characters used in Phonebook entry *Reading*.
Set Side Keys to activate Reject Call or mute ringer Default Reject	*Side key* → Select an item • Set handset action when 📱 or 📱 is pressed for 1+ seconds during incoming transmission.
Set Any key answer Default Off	*Any key answer* → *On* or *Off* • *On*: Press any key except 📱, and 📱 to answer a call.

Touch Panel Setting

Calibrate Touch Panel	Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Touch calibration* → Tap *Start* → Follow the onscreen instructions to sequentially tap the + signs • Tap Cancel to exit.

Handset Customization

13

Security Settings Start Here Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Security*

Activate or cancel Phone Lock	Default Off	Under *Phone lock*, *On* or *Off* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Password Lock	Default Off	*Password lock* → Select an item → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Activate or cancel USIM Lock	Default Off	Under *USIM lock*, *On* or *Off* → Enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits) →Tap OK → Enter USIM password again as required → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Facial recognition	Default Off	*Facial recognition* → Under *On/Off*, *On* or *Off* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Save Facial recognition User	Default Empty	*Facial recognition* → *User registration* → *User 1* to *User 5* → Select image 1 to 5 → Tap Capture → Tap Start → Tap Save • If *Facial recognition* is *Off*, activation confirmation appears after saving image. Choose *Yes* to activate.
Show or hide Guidance	Default Preview	*Facial recognition* → *Guidance* → Select an item
Set Security Level	Default Normal	*Facial recognition* → *Security level* → Select an item
Activate or cancel Function Lock	Default Unlock all	*Function lock* → Check an item to lock → Tap Save → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Secret mode	Default Hide	*Secret mode* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item
Delete Phonebook entries, messages, etc.		*Reset* → *All reset* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*
Restore Settings to default values		*Reset* → *Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*
Activate or cancel PIN Certification	Default Off	Under *PIN certification*, *On* or *Off* → Enter PIN → Tap OK
Change PIN		*Change PIN* → Enter current PIN → Tap OK → Enter new PIN → Tap OK → Enter new PIN again → Tap OK
Change PIN2		*Change PIN2* → Enter current PIN2 → Tap OK → Enter new PIN2 → Tap OK → Enter new PIN2 again → Tap OK
Change Phone Password	Default 9999	*Change password* → Enter current password → Tap OK → Enter new password → Tap OK → Enter new password again → Tap OK

Set IP service setting **Default** Off	*IP service setting* → *On* or *Off* ● Some functions are only available when you set IP service setting to *On*.
Activate Mobile Tracker **Default** Off	*Mobile tracker* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Under *On/Off, On* or *Off* → Tap Recipients field → Enter a recipient → Tap Sender field → Enter sender name → Tap Save → Confirm entries → Tap Agree or Tap Reject

Call Settings [Start Here] Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Call settings*

Forward all calls to Voice Mail (930SC does not ring)	*Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Voice mail On* → *Always(0 sec.)*
Forward unanswered calls to Voice Mail (specify ring time)	*Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Voice mail On* → *No reply(5 - 30 sec.)* → Select an item
Activate and set Forwarding	*Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Call forwarding On* → Select a call type → Select a setting → Select an item → Set number to forward ●When *No reply(5 -30 sec.)* is selected, select duration time.
Cancel Voice Mail/Call Forwarding	*Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Deactivate all* → *Yes*
Confirm current Voice Mail/Call Forwarding settings	*Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Get status*
Listen to Voice Mail message	*Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Listen to voice mail* → 🔲 or tap Call
Activate or cancel Call Waiting	*Optional services* → *Call waiting* → *On* or *Off*
Confirm current Call Waiting settings	*Optional services* → *Call waiting* → *Get status*
Set Outgoing Call Barring	*Optional services* → *Call barring* → *Outgoing call* → Select an item → *On* or *Off* → Enter Network Password → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Incoming Call Barring	*Optional services* → *Call barring* → *Incoming call* → Select an item → *On* or *Off* → Enter Network Password → Tap OK
Cancel all Call Barring	*Optional services* → *Call barring* → *Cancel all barring* → Enter Network Password → Tap OK → *Yes*
Confirm current Call Barring settings	*Optional services* → *Call barring* → *Get status* → Select an item
Change Network Password	*Optional services* → *Call barring* → *Set security code* → Enter current Network Password → Tap OK → Enter new Network Password → Tap OK → Enter new Network Password again → Tap OK
Set Missed Call Notification	*Optional services* → *Missed call notif.* → 🔲 or tap Call

Switching Network Mode **Default** Automatic	*Optional service* → *International call* → *Select network* → Select an item ●If *Manual* is set, select from *3G/GSM*, *3G*, or *GSM*.
Save International Code **Default** 0046010	*Optional services* → *International call* → *International code* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Enter an international code
Add/change/delete Country Number **Default** 1: 日本 (Japan), 2: 韓国 (KOR), 3: イギリス (GBR), 4: イタリア (ITA), 5: スイス (CHE), 6: スペイン (ESP), 7: ドイツ (DEU), 8: ポルトガル (PRT), 9: オランダ (NLD), 0: フランス (FRA), ＊: モナコ (MCO), #: アメリカ合衆国 (USA), スウェーデン (SWE), オーストラリア (AUS), 中国 (CHN), 香港 (HKG), 台湾 (TWN)	*Optional services* → *International call* → *Country number* → Add, change, or delete item ●To add/save, select an item from country code → *Edit* → *Country name* → Enter country name → *Country code* → Enter country code → Tap Save. ●To delete, highlight item → *Delete* → *Yes*.
Select network to access	*Option services* → *International call* → *Select operator* → Select *Auto*/*Manual* → Select an item ●When you set *Manual*, select a network.
Select preferred network from list	*Option services* → *International call* → *Select operator* → *Set priority* → Tap Add → *Network list* → Select a Network
Add a new preferred network	*Option services* → *International call* → *Select operator* → *Set priority* → Tap Add → *New Network* → *Country code* → Enter country code → *Network code* → Enter Network code → *Network name* → Enter Network name → *Network type* → Select an item → Tap Add
Check Call Time/Cost	*Call time & cost* → *All calls* ●To reset call time/cost, tap Reset → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK.
Check last Call Time/Cost	*Call time & cost* → *Last call* ●To reset last call time/cost, tap Reset.
Check Data Counter	*Call time & cost* → *Data counter* ●To reset sent/received data counter, tap Reset.
Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls **Default** Off	*Call time & cost* → Under *Show charge after call*, *On* or *Off* ●This function may not be available.

Change Call Cost Currency	*Call time & cost* → *Set currency* → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK → Tap Price field → Enter rate to the yen → Tap Currency field → Enter currency unit → Tap Save
Set Call Cost Limit	*Call time & cost* → Tap Set max cost limit field → Tap Edit → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK → Select New upper limit → Enter upper limit → Tap Save • After reaching the call cost limit, only emergency calls can be made; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled. • When *Show charge after call* is not available, this function is also unavailable.
Cancel Call Cost Limit	*Call time & cost* → Tap Set max cost limit field → *Reset* → Enter PIN2 → Tap OK
Activate or cancel Answering Machine **Default** Off	*Answering machine* → Under *On/Off, On* or *Off*
Set Answering Machine response time **Default** 18 seconds	*Answering machine* → *Ringing duration* → Select an item • If *Other* is selected, enter time.
Play Answering Machine records	*Answering machine* → *Play messages* → Select a record • To delete record, in list, tap Delete → Check a record to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*.
Set Answering Machine response language **Default** 日本語	*Answering machine* → *Sound language* → Select an item
Set Preset Picture to appear in place of your own image	*Video call* → *Alternative picture* → *Preset picture* → Tap OK
Set Alternative Picture to appear in place of My Image	*Video call* → *Alternative picture* → *Pictures* → Select a file → Tap OK • When Memory Card is inserted, *Digital camera* is selectable.
Adjust incoming video quality **Default** Standard	*Video call* → *Incoming video quality* → Select an item
Adjust outgoing video quality **Default** Standard	*Video call* → *Outgoing video quality* → Select an item
Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold	*Video call* → *Hold setting* → *Hold during call* → *Preset picture* → Tap OK
Set Hold setting	*Video call* → *Hold setting* → *Hold during call* → *Pictures* → Select a file → Tap OK • When Memory Card is inserted, *Digital camera* is selectable.
Set Preset Picture to appear when Video Call is on hold without answering	*Video call* → *Hold setting* → *Hold answer* → *Preset picture* → Tap OK

Set Hold answer setting	*Video call* → *Hold setting* → *Hold answer* → *Pictures* → Select a file → Tap OK ●When Memory Card is inserted, *Digital camera* is selectable.
Activate or cancel voice muting for Video Call **Default** Off	*Video call* → Under *Mute my voice*, *On* or *Off* ●If *On*, tap Mute my voice Off to temporarily send voice.
Activate or cancel Speaker Phone during Video Call **Default** On	*Video call* → Under *Loud speaker*, *On* or *Off*
Set Backlight **Default** On	*Video call* → Under *Backlight*, *On* or *Off* ●When *Off* is set, Display becomes dim.
Set handset response when Video Call cannot be connected **Default** Always ask	*Video call* → *Retry with* → Select an item ●*None*: Calls are disconnected with no notification. ●When a Video Call cannot be connected, prompt appears to retry with the selected setting.
Answer Video Call from specified party automatically **Default** Off	*Video call* → *Auto answer* → Under *On/Off*, *On* or *Off* ●When a Video Call arrives from the specified party, a tone sounds and the call is automatically answered.
Create Auto Answer List	*Video call* → *Auto answer* → *Auto answer list* → Tap Add → Select an item → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Add an entry ●To delete the specified party, after selecting *Auto answer list*, tap Delete → Check an entry to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*.
Show or hide your own image for Video Calls **Default** On	*Video call* → Under *Show my image*, *On* or *Off*
Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers **Default** Off	*Reject incoming calls* → *Set reject number* → Under *On/Off*, *On* or *Off* ●When a call from Reject list arrives, a caller hears a busy tone and call is not connected. *Missed call* appears in Standby. Select the message to check missed call.
Create or edit Black List	*Reject incoming calls* → *Set reject number* → *Black list* → Tap Add → Select an item → Add an entry ●To delete saved phone numbers, select *Black list* → Tap Delete → Check phone numbers to delete → Tap Delete → *Yes*.
Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers **Default** Off	*Reject incoming calls* → Under *Unknown*, *On* or *Off*

Handset Customization

13

Accept or reject calls when number is withheld **Default** Off	*Reject incoming calls* → Under *Withheld*, *On* or *Off*
Accept or reject calls from payphones **Default** Off	*Reject incoming calls* → Under *Payphone*, *On* or *Off*
Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable **Default** Off	*Reject incoming calls* → Under *Unavailable*, *On* or *Off*
Activate or cancel Emission Off mode **Default** Off	Under *Emission Off mode*, *On* or *Off*
Show or hide your own number when placing calls	Under *Show my number*, *On* or *Off* • To check current status, select *Get status*.
Set 930SC to automatically redial busy numbers **Default** Off	Under *Auto redial*, *On* or *Off* • *On*: 930SC automatically disconnects call and redials busy numbers. Auto redial repeats up to 10 times until Cancel is tapped or [☎] is pressed. • Auto redial setting takes priority when Video Call retry setting is selected. • If called party uses Call Forwarding or Voice Mail, call is forwarded accordingly.
Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction **Default** On	Under *Ringtone reducer*, *On* or *Off* • When ringtone volume level is high, the volume level is reduced to Level 1 for the first four seconds, then returns to the set level.
Enable or disable calling via Stereo Earphone Microphone **Default** Earphone call: Off	Tap phone number field → Select an item → Add a phone number → Under *Earphone call*, *On* or *Off* • *On*: Press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number. To change specified number, repeat setup operation, saving the new number.
Adjust Earpiece volume **Default** Level 5	Adjust volume in Hearing volume field

Manner Mode Settings

Switching Manner Mode	Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Manner mode settings* → Select an item
	● To edit each settings in Manner mode, tap Edit → Select a mode → Set each item

Connectivity Settings

Bluetooth®	**Start Here** Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth*
Activate or cancel Bluetooth® functions	**Default** Off	*On* or *Off*
Search for a new Bluetooth® device	*Search* → Device responds, drag it to *930SC* icon → Enter Authorization Code (4 to 16 digits) → Tap OK → Enter same code on device within 30 seconds
Transfer all Phonebook or Calendar entries, or Bookmarks at once	Tap Transfer all → Drag device to connect to *930SC* icon → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item
Edit 930SC name	**Default** 930SC	Tap More → *Settings* → Tap Bluetooth name → Edit name
Confirm 930SC device address	Tap More → *Settings*
	● Address appears on Bluetooth address field.
Search/save from Bluetooth® devices	**Default** Show my phone	Tap More → *Settings* → *Visibility* → Select an item
	● To search and save from other Bluetooth® devices, make 930SC visible.
Set Secure mode	**Default** On	Tap More → *Settings* → Under *Secure mode*, *On* or *Off*
	● *On*: A confirmation appears before transfers.
Adjust Handsfree setting	**Default** Handsfree mode	Tap More → *Settings* → *Handsfree* → Select an item
	Private mode: Use Microphone for handset calls or handsfree device for device calls.
	Handsfree mode: Talk via handsfree device.
Set Answering mode	**Default** Normal	Tap More → *Settings* → *Answering mode* → Select an item
	● To set automatic answer time, select *Automatic* then answer time.
Confirm available Bluetooth® functions	Tap More → *Settings* → *Bluetooth services* → Select an item

Infrared	**Start Here** Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Infrared*
Activate or cancel Infrared transmission **Default** Off	Under *On/Off*, *On* or *Off*
Transfer Phonebook or Calendar entries, and Bookmarks at once	*Transfer all* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item → Enter Authorization Code (4 digits) → Tap OK ●For *Phonebook*, choose *Yes* to transfer images.

USB	**Start Here** Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *USB mode*
Activate Mass Storage	*Mass storage* → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Connect 930SC to PC via USB Cable → Exchange files with PC
Activate MTP Sync Mode	*MTP synch mode* → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Exchange files with PC ●You need to connect 930SC and your PC before this operation.

Network	
Retrieve Network Information manually	Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Retrieve NW info* → *Yes* or *No*

Memory Settings [Start Here] Tap Menu → *Settings* → *Memory settings*

Check Memory Card details	*Memory card* ● Check Memory Card name, memory capacity, or remaining memory.
Rename Memory Card	*Memory card* → *Name* → Enter name
Format Memory Card	*Memory card* → Tap Format → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*
Backup Memory	*Memory card* → Tap Backup → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item → *Yes*
Restore Memory	*Memory card* → Tap Restore → *Yes* → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → Select an item → Select a file → *Add* or *Overwrite*
Confirm total or remaining Phone Memory	*Phone memory* ● View Phone memory capacity or remaining memory.
Clear Phone Memory	*Phone memory* → Tap Clear → Check an item to clear → Tap Clear → Enter Phone Password → Tap OK → *Yes*
Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card Default Phone	*Set default memory* → Select an item ● With Memory Card inserted, select 930SC (Phone) or Memory Card. Available when editing images, saving S! Mail attachments, downloading files, receiving data via Bluetooth®, etc. ● When *Memory card* or *Always ask* is selected with no Memory Card inserted, files are automatically saved to 930SC.
View Memory status	*Memory status* → Select an item ● To delete viewed memory, tap Delete (❷P.2-39 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Appendix

14

Battery & Charger

Before Using Battery or Charger

Charge battery before first use of 930SC or after long periods of disuse.

Charging Battery

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge. Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use. Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- 930SC uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery in anytime without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
  - In ambient temperatures beyond 5ºC - 40ºC
  - In high levels of humidity, vibration or dust (May cause malfunction)
  - Near a radio receiver (May cause feedback)
- 930SC or Charger may warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to the touch, stop charging and contact Customer Service (⊙P.14-29).

- Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

Note
- **Use specified Charger only.**
- **Battery must be inside 930SC to charge it.**
- **When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet.**

Battery Life

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:
- Environmental Factors
  - Storing/using 930SC beyond 5ºC - 40ºC
  - Using 930SC when signal is poor/out-of-range
  - Debris on 930SC, battery or Charger Port
- Operational Factors
  - Camera use
  - Media Player use
  - Heavy use (e.g., for using messaging)
  - Bluetooth® transmissions
  - Watching TV
- Settings
  - Using Slide Show
  - Increasing *Brightness* or *Backlight time*
  - Using Media Player with Backlight set to *Always On*

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank shop. Follow any and all local regulations regarding battery disposal. Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.
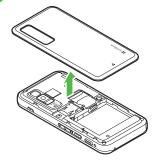
When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and 930SC beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise 930SC will automatically turn off.

Inserting & Removing Battery

Inserting

1. **Press and slide Battery Cover as shown**
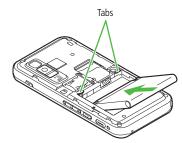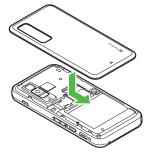
2. **Remove Battery Cover**

3. **Fit battery into 930SC as shown**

   Tabs

4. **Replace Battery Cover**
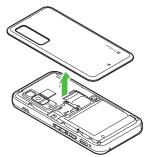
Removing

Always turn 930SC off before removing battery. Never remove battery while AC Charger is connected.

1 Press and slide Battery Cover as shown
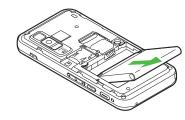
2 Remove Battery Cover

3 Lift battery up and remove as shown

USIM Card

Information & Precautions

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phonebook entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use 930SC; turn 930SC power off to insert/remove USIM Card.

USIM Card

Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phonebook entries saved on USIM Card. Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details):

- Avoid using excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.

- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

Note
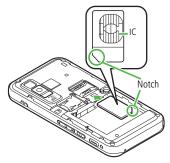
- **USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.**
- **If USIM Card is lost or damaged, you will be charged for reissuing it.**
- **Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon termination of subscription.**
- **Returned USIM Cards are recycled.**
- **USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.**
- **If USIM Card or 930SC with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, immediately contact Customer Service (⊖P.14-29) to suspend service.**
- **Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement, or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® or video files on handset/ Memory Card.**
- **Back-up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.**

Inserting & Removing USIM Card

Always turn power off before opening 930SC to remove battery, or insert/remove USIM Card.

Inserting

1 **Remove battery (⊖P.14-4)**

2 **With IC chip down, insert USIM Card into card slot as shown in the illustration**

IC

Notch

3 **Push in USIM Card until it stops and locks**

Removing

1 **Remove battery (➋P.14-4)**

2 **Press down on USIM Card and gently slide it out**

Note
- **Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or 930SC.**
- **Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.**
- **To prevent damaging it, avoid touching the IC chip when inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not touch battery contacts.**

PIN

USIM Card features 2 security codes: PIN and PIN2.

PIN

Use PIN (4- to 8-digit) to prevent unauthorized use of 930SC by others.

- Modify PIN (➋P.11-2).
- When PIN lock is activated, PIN entry is required each time 930SC is turned on or whenever USIM Card is re-inserted (➋P.11-2).

PIN2

PIN2 (4- to 8-digit) is required for Reset Call Cost or Edit Cost Limit, etc.

- Modify PIN2 (➋P.11-2).

Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock and limits 930SC function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock.
For more information, contact Customer Service (➋P.14-29).

Note
- **Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times locks USIM Card and deactivates 930SC. Take a note of PUK and PUK2.**
- **A locked USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact Customer Service (➋P.14-29).**

Troubleshooting

■ 930SC does not turn on

- ☑ Is battery empty?
- ➡ Replace or charge battery.

- ☑ Is battery installed in 930SC?
- ➡ Install battery correctly.

■ When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears

- ☑ Is *PIN certification* set to *On*?
- ➡ If *PIN certification* is *On*, enter PIN.

■ When power is turned on, USIM password entry window appears

- ☑ Is *USIM lock* set to *On*?
- ➡ If *USIM lock* is *On*, enter USIM password.

■ *Please insert USIM card, Incorrect USIM* or *USIM card failed* appears when 930SC is turned on or executing a function

- ☑ Is USIM Card correctly installed?
- ➡ Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed. If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.

- ☑ Is USIM Card still being loaded?
- ➡ Try again after a while.

- ☑ Is an incorrect USIM Card used?
- ➡ Check to see if correct USIM Card is used. Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.

- ☑ Is there debris on USIM Card IC chip?
- ➡ Remove debris with a clean, dry cloth, and then install USIM Card correctly.

■ 圏外 or ⃠ appears and no calls can be made

- ☑ 930SC is out-of-range.
- ➡ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

■ Calls are interrupted or disconnected

- ☑ Does 圏外 or ⃠ appear?
- ➡ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

- ☑ Is battery empty?
- ➡ Replace or charge battery.

■ Unable to make a call

- ☑ Is Call Barring set?
- ➡ Deactivate Call Barring.

- ☑ Is *Emission Off mode* set to *On*? (⃠ appears)
- ➡ Set *Emission Off mode* to *Off*.

■ Unable to open Phonebook entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, or Messaging

- ☑ Is *Function lock* set?
- ➡ Cancel *Function lock*.

■ Clicking noise is heard during a call

- ☑ Noise may be generated when signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.

■ Unable to charge battery

☑ Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted into 930SC?
➡ Insert AC Charger Connector securely.

☑ Is AC Charger plug securely inserted?
➡ Insert AC Charger plug securely.

☑ Is battery installed in 930SC?
➡ Install battery correctly.

☑ Are 930SC terminals and AC Charger clean?
➡ Clean contacts with a dry cotton swab.

☑ Was battery charged in ambient temperature below 5 ℃ or above 40 ℃?
➡ Charge battery in ambient temperature between 5 ℃ and 40 ℃.

☑ Battery may need to be replaced.
➡ Install a new battery.

☑ Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?
➡ Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.

☑ Does 930SC or battery become very warm during charging?
➡ If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After 930SC and battery are cool, retry charging.

■ Devices become hot

☑ During charging, AC Charger may heat up.

☑ 930SC may heat up during charging/long calls.
➡ If 930SC is safe to touch, heat level is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (●P.14-29).

■ Battery drains quickly

☑ Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (Ambient temperature, charging conditions, or Signal Strength), operations, and settings.
➡ Use 930SC in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (●P.14-2).

■ Unable to watch TV

☑ Is USIM Card removed?
➡ Unable to watch TV with no USIM Card inserted. Insert USIM Card.

☑ Is subscription terminated?
➡ TV is enabled only during subscription period.

■ Display flickers

☑ Is 930SC used near a fluorescent light?
➡ Use 930SC as far away from a fluorescent light as possible.

■ Display is dim or unlit

☑ This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time (seconds) until Display is dimmed or unlit can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time.

■ Unable to play music via speaker

☑ Is *Manner mode* set?
➡ Cancel *Manner mode*.

☑ Is the stereo earphone microphone connected?
➡ Disconnect the connector for the stereo earphone microphone from 930SC.

■ *Too many applications are already running.* **appears**

☑ Too many functions are active.
➡ Close some.

■ **Unable to establish Bluetooth® or USB connections using Samsung PC Studio**

☑ Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)
➡ If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with USB cable, installing the driver is required. Download USB Driver Installer from SAMSUNG website (http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/930download.html) and install the driver.

☑ Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?
➡ Set the connection method to *USB* or *Bluetooth* on the Connection Manager of Samsung PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.

☑ Are Bluetooth® or PC USB connection port and Samsung PC Studio the same?
➡ Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.

■ **Phonebook entry, Message folder, schedule event in Calendar, or Tasks do not appear**

☑ In *Security,* is *Secret mode* set to *Hide*?
➡ In *Security,* set *Secret mode* to *Show.*

☑ Is *Secret* under each function set to *On*?
➡ Select *Unlock temporarily* from More on the window to display information.

■ *Sending message failed* **appears**

☑ If send fails, error message and reason appear.
➡ Confirm reason and try again.

■ *Service not allowed* **appears**

☑ 930SC is outside the service area.
➡ Send from within the service area.

■ *Sending operation cannot be operated in offline mode* **appears**

☑ In *Emission Off mode,* handset transmissions are disabled.
➡ Cancel *Emission Off mode* then try again.

■ *Storage space short by ** bytes. Edit data folder files?* **appears**

☑ 930SC memory is full.
➡ Delete unnecessary files and try again.

■ *Cannot download. File corrupt.* **appears**

➡ File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.

■ **Unable to call via Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth®**

☑ Is *Earphone call* set to *Off*?
➡ Even if *Earphone call* number is saved, if *Earphone call* is set to *Off* it will not be dialed. Set *Earphone call* to *On*.

Software Update

Check for 930SC software updates and download as required. Choose to begin *Update* or *Schedule update*.

1 Tap Menu → *Tools* → *Software update*

2 Tap Yes
- 930SC connects to network by tapping Yes.

3 Read Terms of Use and then *Agree*
- Read through Terms of Use before selecting *Agree*.

4 Tap PIN Code entry field → Enter Center Access Code (◯P.1-16) → Tap OK → Tap OK

5 Confirm check result → Tap OK

6 Select one from the following updating methods

■ To update immediately
Update now
- The update starts. When completed, 930SC turns the power off and on again; then Notification window appears.

```
Software update
Reboot completed. Now
checking updated infor
mation.




            OK
            ○
```
Notification Window

■ To schedule later update
Schedule update → Tap Yes → Select schedule date → Select schedule time → Confirm schedule date & time → Tap OK

- For procedures, find details on SoftBank Website (http://www.softbank.jp).
- No fees are applied to update checks or downloads.
- At scheduled update time, message appears. Tap OK or wait ten seconds. Update will not start while 930SC is in use. When operation ends, a message window appears. However if operation does not end within ten minutes of scheduled update time, scheduled update is automatically canceled.

```
Software update
Your scheduled update
is about to start.




            OK
            ○
```
Message Window

- To cancel Schedule update, perform Steps **1** to **4** and tap Yes → Tap Cancel schedule → Tap Yes on the check result screen.

Function List

Toolbar Menu

Below are menu items displayed on Toolbar in Standby.

Toolbar Menu Item	Page
Phone	
Dial	P.3-2
Phone book	P.2-12, P.2-16
Call log	P.3-8
Account details	P.2-19
Messaging	
Received msg.	P.4-8, P.4-10
Create new	P.4-3
Retrieve new	P.4-20
Drafts	P.4-10, P.4-22
Templates	P.4-10, P.4-18, P.4-20
Sent msg.	P.4-10
Unsent	P.4-10
Server mail	P.4-24

Toolbar Menu Item	Page
Messaging	
Create new SMS	P.4-6
Settings	P.13-2
Memory status	P.2-29
Y! Keitai*	
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved pages	P.5-7
Enter URL	P.5-3, P.5-4
History	P.5-13, P.5-15
PC site browser	P.5-4
Yahoo! Keitai browser settings	P.13-6

* Tap Menu → Tap Y! Keitai to display the menu items shown in the table. Tap 📧 to access the Yahoo! Keitai main menu.

Main Menu

To display the below items, tap Menu on Toolbar in Standby.

Main Menu Item		Page
Oekaki anime		P.7-10
Photo Album		P.2-22
Media Player		
	Music	P.8-6
	Movie	P.8-7
	Streaming	P.5-8
	Settings	P.13-8
Communication		
	S! Loop	P.5-11
	S! Friend's Status	P.10-2
Camera		
	Take photo	P.7-5
	Record Video	P.7-8
	Bar code reader	P.9-8
TV		
	Watch TV	P.6-6
	Program guide	P.6-6
	TV links	P.6-7
	TV player	P.6-9
	Reservation list	P.6-9

Main Menu Item		Page
TV		
	Settings	P.13-11
Tools		
	Alarm	P.9-3
	Calculator	P.9-4
	Converter	P.9-4
	World clock	P.9-5
	Notepad	P.9-5
	Tasks	P.9-6
	Voice recorder	P.9-7
	Stopwatch	P.9-8
	Bar code reader	P.9-8
	File viewer	P.9-10
	Dictionary	P.9-11
	Software update	P.14-10
Data Folder		
	Pictures	P.2-19
	My Pictograms	P.2-19
	Ring songs · tones	P.2-19
	Music	P.2-19
	Videos	P.2-19
	Graphic Mail templates	P.2-19
	Flash®	P.2-20
	Flash® Ringtones	P.2-20

Main Menu Item		Page
Data Folder		
	Other documents	P.2-20
	Memory status	P.2-20
Entertainment		
	S! Quick News	P.5-9
	S! Information Channel/ Weather Indicator	P.5-12
	Dice	P.8-9
	RandomBall	P.8-9
Calendar		P.9-2
Phonebook		
	Phonebook	P.2-16
	Create new entry	P.2-14
	Call log	P.3-8
	Group settings	P.2-34
	Account details	P.2-19
	Speed dial	P.3-7
	S! Addressbook Back-up	P.12-10
	Settings	P.13-12
	Memory status	P.2-34
Settings		
	Sound settings	P.13-13
	Display settings	P.13-14
	Phone settings	P.13-15

Main Menu Item	Page
Settings	
Security	P.13-17
Call settings	P.13-19
Manner mode settings	P.13-24
Connectivity	P.13-24
Memory settings	P.13-26

Key List for Text Entry

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Tap a key repeatedly until the target character appears. Depending on text entry window, some keys do not appear.

Common Use Keys on Text Entry Window

Key	Use purpose
記号	Switch to Double-byte/Single-byte symbols entry mode
⊡	Enlarge text entry area
↑ / ↓ / ← / →	Move cursor up, down, left, right
⎵	Enter space
↵	Enter line break
A/a	Toggle upper/lower-cases
Clear / CLEAR	Delete one character before cursor or highlighted text
⟲	Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection (except Numbers)

Text Entry Keys

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Key (Double-/Single-byte)	Katakana
1あ	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ1	1ア / 1ｱ	アイウエオァィゥェォ1
2か	かきくけこ2	2カ / 2ｶ	カキクケコ2
3さ	さしすせそ3	3サ / 3ｻ	サシスセソ3
4た	たちつてとっ4	4タ / 4ﾀ	タチツテトッ4
5な	なにぬねの5	5ナ / 5ﾅ	ナニヌネノ5
6は	はひふへほ6	6ハ / 6ﾊ	ハヒフヘホ6
7ま	まみむめも7	7マ / 7ﾏ	マミムメモ7

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Key (Double-/Single-byte)	Katakana
`8 や TUV`	やゆよゃゅょ8	`8 ヤ` / `8 ャ`	ヤユヨャュョ8
`9 ら WXYZ`	らりるれろ9	`9 ラ` / `9 ぅ`	ラリルレロ9
`0 わ。`	わをん、。－0	`0 ワ。` / `0 ワ。`	ワヲン、。－0
`絵 ゛゜`	• Add ゛/゜ to unfixed, convertible kana • Switch to Pictograms/Emoticons entry mode		

Key[1]	Alphanumerics	Key (Double-/Single-byte)	Numbers
`1 .@` (Double-byte) / `1 .@` (Single-byte)[2]	.@-_/:~[3]1	`1` / `1`	1
`2 ABC` / `2 abc` / `2 ABC` / `2 abc`	ABCabc2	`2` / `2`	2
`3 DEF` / `3 def` / `3 DEF` / `3 def`	DEFdef3	`3` / `3`	3
`4 GHI` / `4 ghi` / `4 GHI` / `4 ghi`	GHIghi4	`4` / `4`	4
`5 JKL` / `5 jkl` / `5 JKL` / `5 jkl`	JKLjkl5	`5` / `5`	5
`6 MNO` / `6 mno` / `6 MNO` / `6 mno`	MNOmno6	`6` / `6`	6
`7 PQRS` / `7 pqrs` / `7 PQRS` / `7 pqrs`	PQRSpqrs7	`7` / `7`	7
`8 TUV` / `8 tuv` / `8 TUV` / `8 tuv`	TUVtuv8	`8` / `8`	8
`9 WXYZ` / `9 wxyz` / `9 WXYZ` / `9 wxyz`	WXYZwxyz9	`9` / `9`	9
`0 ,.` (Double-byte) / `0 ,.` (Single-byte)[2]	,.－_!?<space>0	`0` / `0`	0
`絵`[4]	Switch to Pictograms/Emoticons entry mode		

[1] If not otherwise specified, each key indicates double-byte upper-case/double-byte lower-case/single-byte upper-case/single-byte lower-case.

[2] Both when upper-/lower-case, the same key indicates.

[3] When double-byte, "~" cannot be used ("～" appears on Display).

[4] Both when alphanumerics and numbers, the same key indicates.

Symbols

Double-byte Symbols

```
、。！？〈スペース〉，．・：；゛゜´｀¨＾￣＿ヽヾゝゞ〃
仝々〆○―― - ／＼〜‖｜…‥''""（）〔〕
［］｛｝〈〉《》「」『』【】＋－±×÷＝≠＜
＞≦≧∞∴♂♀°′″℃￥＄￠￡％＃＆＊＠§☆
★○●◎◇◆□■△▲▽▼※〒→←↑↓＝∈∋⊆
⊇⊂⊃∪∩∧∨￢⇒⇔∀∃∠⊥⌒∂∇≡≒≪≫√
∽∝∵∫∬Å‰♯♭♪†‡¶○ゎゐゑ゛ヰヱヴヵ
ヶＡＢＧＤＥＺＨΘＩＫＬＭＮΞＯΠＰΣＴΥΦ
ＸΨΩαβγδεζηθικλμνξοπρστ
υφχψωＡＢＶＧＤＥЁＪＺＩЙＫＬＭＮＯＰ
ＲＳＴＵＦＸＣＣШЩЪЫЬЭЮＪａｂｖｇｄｅ
ёжзийклмнопрстуфхцчшщъ
ыьэюя─│┌┐┘└├┬┤┴┼━┃┏┓┛┗
┣┳┫┻╋┠┯┨┷┿┝┰┥┸╂①②③④⑤⑥
⑦⑧⑨⑩⑪⑫⑬⑭⑮⑯⑰⑱⑲⑳ⅠⅡⅢ
ⅣⅤⅥⅦⅧⅨⅩ㍉㌔㌢㍍㌘㌧㌃㌶㍑㍗
㌍㌦㌣㌫㍊㌻㎜㎝㎞㎎㎏㏄㎡㍻〟″〃№
㏍℡㊤㊥㊦㊧㊨㈱㈲㈹㍾㍽㍼∮∑⌒⌒∟△
```

Single-byte Symbols

```
、。！？〈スペース〉" ＃ ＄ ％ ＆ ' ( ) ＊ ＋ , － ． ／ : ; ＜ ＝ ＞
＠ [ ￥ ] ^ _ ` { | } ~ 「 」 ・ - ゜ ゜
```

Symbol Conversions

Symbol Label	Symbol	Symbol Label	Symbol
あっと	＠＠	こめ	※
いこーる	＝＝	ころん	：；
えん	￥￥	さんかく	△▲▽▼
おんぷ	♪	しかく	◇◆□■
かける	×	どう	ゝ〃仝々
かっこ	()「」『』【】〈〉 []''""() 〔〕[]{}〈〉 《》	ぱーせんと	％％
		ほし	☆★
		まる	○●◎
から	〜	やじるし	→←↑↓

Memory List

S! Mail/ SMS (Phone memory)	Received messages	Up to 1000 messages or 5MB
	Drafts	Up to 20 messages or 1MB
	Sent messages	Up to 500 messages or 3MB
	Unsent	Up to 20 messages or 1MB
SMS	USIM card	Up to 10 messages
Data Folder	Pictures	Up to 999 items (files/subfolders) per folder
	My Pictograms	
	Ring songs · tones	
	Music	
	Videos	
	Graphic Mail templates	
	Flash®	
	Flash® Ringtones	
	Other documents	

Specifications

930SC specifications may change without prior notice.

SoftBank 930SC

Item	Specification
Weight	127 g*
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: 250 minutes (3G)/350 minutes (GSM)* Video Call: 130 minutes*
Continuous Standby Time (Display off)	400 hours (3G)/450 hours (GSM)*
Dimensions (W x H x D)	58.1 x 115.2 x 13.0 ㎜*
Maximum Output	0.25 W

* Approximate Value

- 930SC with battery installed.
- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank under stable signal conditions. Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving 930SC on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.
- Frequent 930SC operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.

- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a battery in stable signal conditions. Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery with 930SC closed without calls or operations, in Standby, in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	1,100 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	44.3 x 36.9 x 6.7 mm* (without protruding parts)

* Approximate Value

Index

Objective Index

Appendix

14

Advanced Settings Index

Warranty & Service

Warranty

930SC purchase includes Warranty.

• Confirm shop name and date of purchase.

• Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.

• The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

SoftBank is not liable for damage to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

Repair Requests

Before submitting 930SC for repair, consult the "Troubleshooting" for a solution. If a problem persists, contact Customer Service (●P.14-29) or the nearest SoftBank shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

• During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.

• After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

Note

• **930SC files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phonebook entries. SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from accidental loss or alteration of 930SC files (Phonebook, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.**

• **Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.**

Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Center	**SoftBank Global Call Center**
From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 for General Information, or 113 for Customer Assistance, toll free	From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491** (Please take care to dial correctly. International charges will apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	(Free Call) 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	(Free Call) 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	(Free Call) 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	(Free Call) 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	(Free Call) 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	(Free Call) 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	(Free Call) 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	(Free Call) 0088-250-113

SoftBank 930SC   User Guide

For more information, please visit your
nearest SoftBank Shop.

モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

**To help protect the environment and recycle valuable
resources, mobile phone, and PHS shops displaying the
above mark accept mobile phones, batteries, and chargers of
all manufacturers.**

Mobile phones, batteries, and chargers collected for recycling cannot
be returned.

To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone
numbers, call log records, messages, etc.) beforehand.